

ENGLISH

الصف الرابع الابتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

20
26



4th
PRIMARY
SECOND TERM

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Specifications for FOUR Year Primary

مواصفات امتحان الصف الرابع الابتدائي ٢٠٢٥ - ٢٠٢٦

Marks: 30

Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (2 Marks)

1 Listen and write (T)True or (F) False: (2 Marks)

استمع واكتب صواب أو خطأ:

A listening text of about **FIFTY (50)** words at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FOUR** followed by **FOUR (4)** sentences is provided. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Learners are asked to listen to the text and write (T)True or (F) False.

(Half a mark each)

B- Reading (13 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (3 Marks)

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

SIX (6) multiple choice questions **MCQs** (3 vocabulary and 3 structures) related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(Half a mark each)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2 Marks)

اقرأ واكمل النص بالكلمات التي في الاطار:

An unseen text from **FORTY (40)** to **FIFTY (50)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE (1)** of the **FIVE (5)** words given. The first sentence should be written in full.

(Half a mark each)

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (8 Marks)

اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة:

An unseen literary or informational text from **SEVENTY (70)** to **EIGHTY (80)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for **Primary FOUR**. Learners are asked to answer:

- A. TWO (2) MCQs** with **FOUR (4)** options each (One mark and each)
B. THREE (2) open-ended (2 marks each)

The questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in a text.

C- Writing (15 Marks)

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Marks)

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

FOUR (4) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets.

(One mark each)

6 Punctuate the following: (4 Marks)

ضع علامات الترقيم للاثي:

TWO (2) simple statements (sentence or question) of about **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Each statement has **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks (**Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly

(2 marks each)

7 Write a paragraph of **FOUR (4)** sentences using the words below: (7 Marks)

اكتب فقرة انشائية من (4) أربع جمل:

Learners are asked to write a paragraph of **FOUR (4)** sentences of not less than **TWENTY (20)** words using the **THREE (3)** guiding words given.

(Two marks for relevance of ideas- Two marks for vocabulary- One mark for grammar –One mark for spelling- One mark for punctuation))

Contents

4

Primary

Part 1

Punctuation

- **Unit 1:** This is Where I Live
- **Unit 2:** World, Our Responsibility
- **Unit 3:** What's in the Package?
- **Review 1**



Part 2

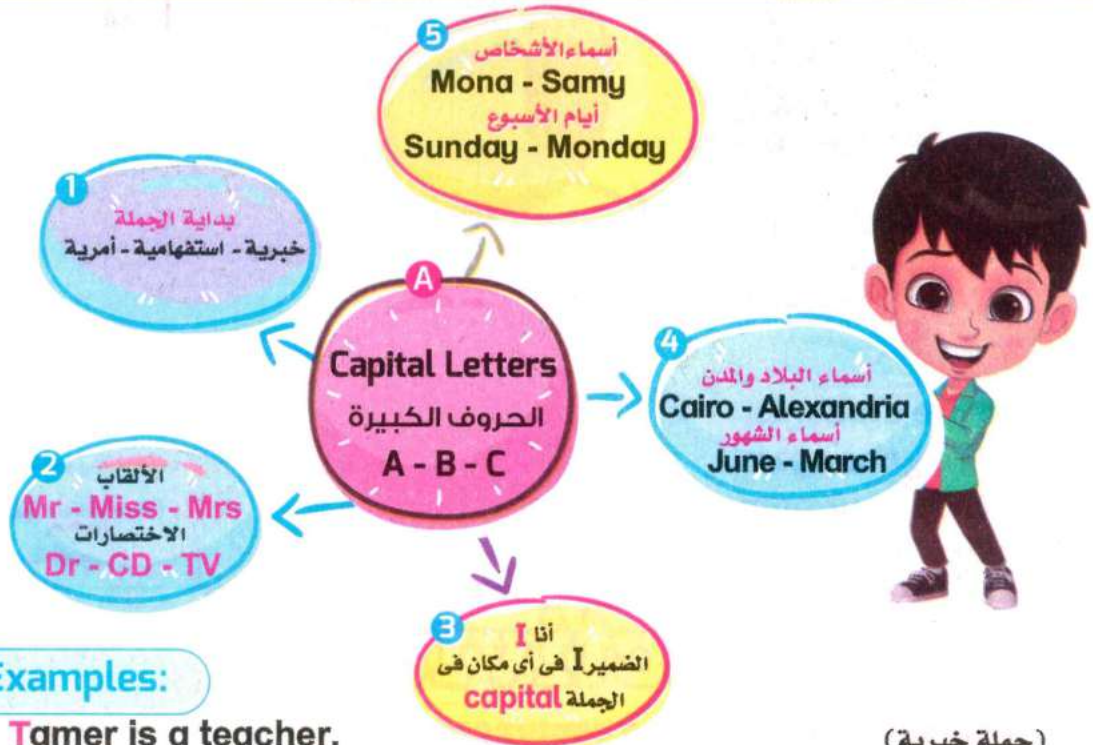
- **Unit 4:** Let's Celebrate
- **Unit 5:** Exploring Wonders in Egypt
- **Unit 6:** Story (The Lost Kite)
- **Review 2**
- Listening materials
- Booklet
- Dictation
- Exercises and tests
- Final tests and listening materials



Punctuation

علامات الترقيم

ABC



Examples:

1. **T**amer is a teacher.
2. **O**pen your book.
3. **W**here's your pen?
4. **I** want some water. **I**'m thirsty.
5. She visited **C**airo in **M**arch.
6. **M**r Sameh plays football on **F**riday.

(جملة خبرية)

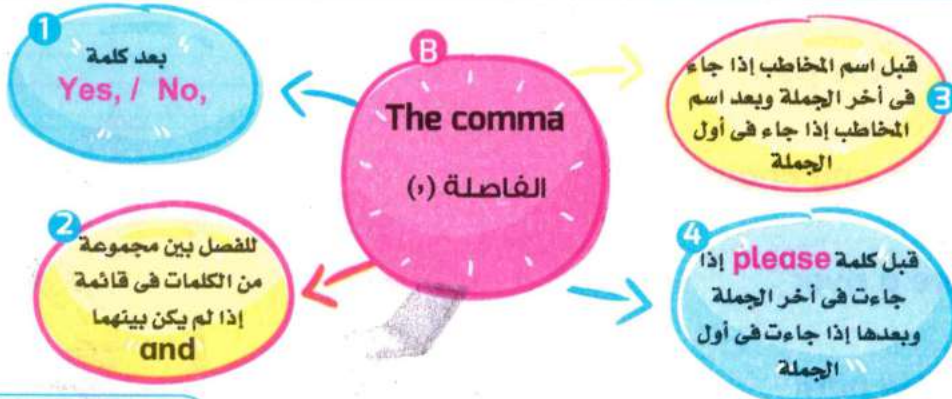
(جملة أمرية)

(جملة استفهامية)

(الضمير I)

(أسماء مدن وشهور)

(الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)



Examples:

- 1- **Yes**, he is. / **No**, she isn't. (Yes, / No, بعد)
- 2- I want **paper**, **pencils** and **pens**. (لفصل بين مجموعة كلمات في قائمة)
- 3- Come here, **Ashraf**. / **Ashraf**, come here. (اسم مخاطب)
- 4- Give me this book, **please**. / **Please**, give me this book. (Please كلمة)

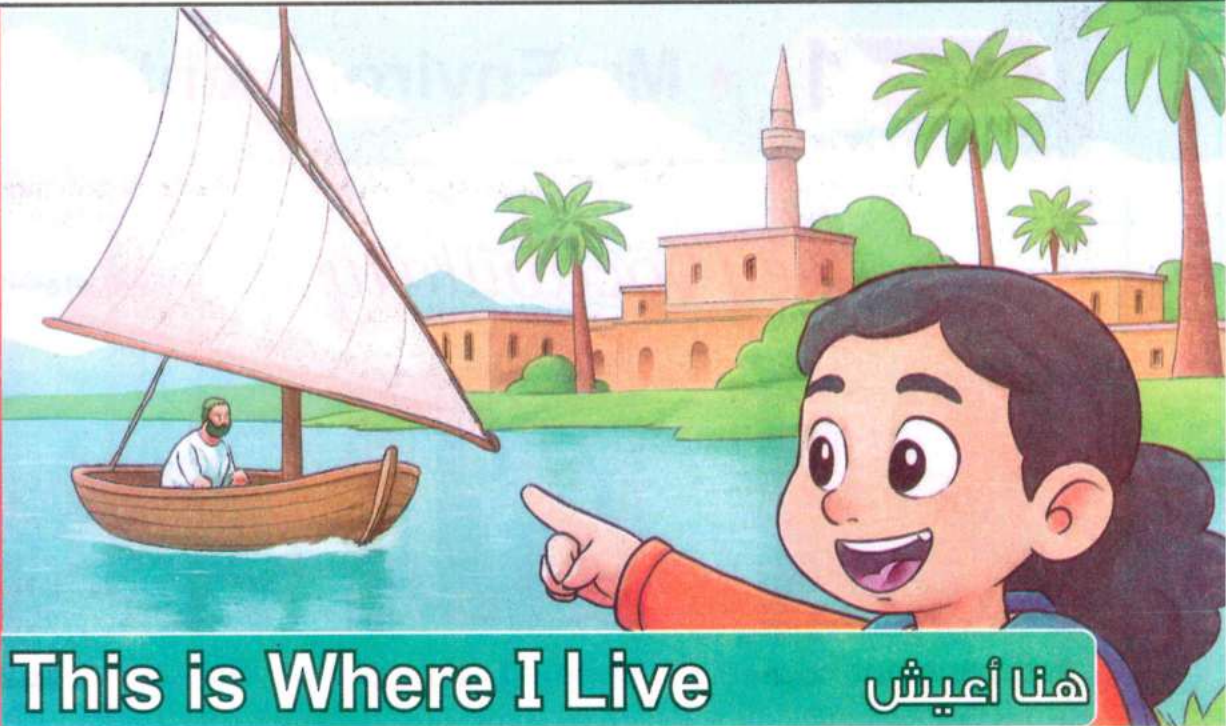


1. We are students.
2. Close your eyes.
3. What's your name?
4. Hello! Manal.

Activities

- 1 this is my toy
- 2 look at the book
- 3 where is the pen
- 4 are there any chairs
- 5 is there a river
- 6 i'm in the park
- 7 noha likes flowers
- 8 how much is the pen

Unit 1



This is Where I Live

هنا أعيش

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- Describe different environments using new vocabulary.

يصف الطالب بيئات مختلفة مستخدماً مفردات جديدة.

- Present short oral talks using the past simple tense.

يقدم الطالب عروضاً شفوية قصيرة مستخدماً زمن الماضي البسيط.

- Pronounce words with silent letters (k, l) correctly in speech.

ينطق الطالب الكلمات التي تحتوي على حروف صامتة مثل (k, l) نطقاً صحيحاً أثناء الكلام.

Listening:

- Listen to short texts and dialogs about environments and past events.

يستمع الطالب إلى نصوص وحوارات قصيرة عن البيئات والأحداث الماضية.

- Identify words with silent letters (k, l) in spoken context.

يُميز الطالب الكلمات التي تحتوي على حروف صامتة (k, l) عند سماعها في السياق المنطوق.

Reading:

- Read texts and dialogs about different environments.

- Identify main ideas and key vocabulary in context.

يحدد الطالب الأفكار الرئيسية والمفردات الأساسية في السياق.

- Recognize words with silent letters (k, l).

Writing:

- Write a friendly letter about personal experiences in different places.

يكتب الطالب رسالة ودية عن تجاربه الشخصية في أماكن مختلفة.

- Apply correct letter structure, including greeting, body, and closing.

يطبق الطالب البنية الصحيحة للرسالة متضمنة التحية والمضمون والخاتمة.

- Use past simple tense and environmental vocabulary accurately in writing.

يستخدم الطالب زمن الماضي البسيط ومفردات البيئة بدقة في الكتابة.

- Plan a presentation on "What you like in the place you live".

يعد الطالب عرضاً شفهيًا بعنوان "ما الذي يعجبك في المكان الذي تعيش فيه".

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



environment البيئة



building مبنى / بناء



city مدينة



village قرية



oasis واحة



river نهر



well بئر مياه



project مشروع



desert صحراء

advantages

مميزات

challenges

تحديات

Other words كلمات أخرى

cousin	ابن العم / ابنة العم	people	أشخاص / ناس
neighbor	جار / جارة	life	حياة
animal	حيوان	tent	خيمة
water	ماء		

Definitions تعريفات

environment البيئة	Everything around us, like air, water, land, and animals. البيئة هي كل ما يحيط بنا مثل الهواء والماء والأرض والحيوانات
building مبنى / بناء	A tall structure that can have many floors where people live or work. المبنى العالي يمكن أن يحتوي على طوابق كثيرة يعيش أو يعمل فيها الناس
village قرية	A small place where people live together. القرية هي مكان صغير يعيش فيه الناس معًا
oasis واحة	A place in the desert where there is water, plants, and trees. الواحة هي مكان في الصحراء يوجد فيه ماء ونباتات وأشجار
river نهر	A large, natural flow of water that moves across the land into a lake or sea. النهر هو مجرى طبيعي كبير للماء يجري عبر الأرض إلى بحيرة أو بحر
city مدينة	is a big place with many people, cars, and tall buildings. المدينة هي مكان كبير يوجد فيه كثير من الناس والسيارات والمباني العالية.

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

What about you?	ماذا عنك؟	in tents	في الخيام
That's interesting!	هذا مثير للاهتمام!	on camels	على الجمال
Exactly	بالضبط	with my cousin	مع ابن عمي / ابنة عمي
I realized that...	أدركت أن...	in the village	في القرية
helped us understand	ساعدنا على الفهم	about the desert	عن الصحراء
lived simply	عاشوا ببساطة	through Egypt	عبر مصر
used wells for water	استخدموا الآبار للحصول على الماء	for water	من أجل الماء

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
raise	يربي
compare	يقارن
explain	يشرح
learn	يتعلم
realize	يدرك
farm	يزرع
live	يعيش
adapt	يتكيف / يتأقلم

Past ماض
raised
compared
explained
learned
realized
farmed
lived
adapted

Present مضارع	
do	يفعل
write	يكتب
have	يملك / لديه
choose	يختار

Past ماض
did
wrote
had
chose

Study the following

- Did you finish the project our teacher asked us to do last week?
هل أنهيت المشروع الذي طلبته منا المعلمة الأسبوع الماضي؟
- Yes, I did. I enjoyed it a lot. What about you?
نعم، فعلت. استمتعت به كثيراً. وماذا عنك؟
- I worked on it with my cousin.
عملت عليه مع ابنة عمي.
- We compared life in the city with life in the village.
قارنا بين الحياة في المدينة والحياة في القرية.
- I explained how people lived in tents and traveled on camels.
شرحت كيف كان الناس يعيشون في الخيام ويسافرون على الجمال.
- They used wells for water.
كانوا يستخدمون الآبار للحصول على الماء.
- I learned that people in villages lived simply.
تعلمت أن الناس في القرى عاشوا حياة بسيطة.
- They farmed, raised animals, and knew all their neighbors.
كانوا يزرعون، ويربّون الحيوانات، ويعرفون جميع جيرانهم.
- City life was different.
كانت حياة المدينة مختلفة.
- People lived in tall buildings and used cars and buses.
كان الناس يعيشون في مباني عالية ويستخدمون السيارات والحافلات.

11 There were shops everywhere.

- كانت هناك محلات في كل مكان.

12 Every place had advantages and challenges.

- كان لكل مكان مزايا وتحديات.

13 The project helped us understand how people adapted to their environments.

- ساعدنا المشروع على فهم كيف تأقلم الناس مع بيئاتهم.

Listen and read:

استمع وأقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:



أماكن مختلفة في البيئة Different Places in the Environment

Maha : Hi, Salma, did you finish the project our teacher asked us to do last week?

مرحباً سلمى، هل أنهيت المشروع الذي طلبته منا المعلمة الأسبوع الماضي؟

Salma : Yes, I did. I enjoyed it a lot. What about you?

نعم، أنهيته. استمتعت به كثيراً. وماذا عنك؟

Maha : I worked on it with my cousin. عملت عليه مع ابنة عمي.

We compared life in the city with life in the village. What did you choose?

قارنًا بين الحياة في المدينة والحياة في القرية. ماذا اخترت أنت؟

Salma : I wrote about the desert. كتبت عن الصحراء.

I explained how people lived in tents, traveled on camels, and used wells for water.

شرحت كيف كان الناس يعيشون في خيام، ويسافرون على الجمال، ويستخدمون الآبار للحصول على الماء.

Maha : That's interesting!

هذا مثير للاهتمام!

I learned that people in villages lived simply.

تعلمت أن الناس في القرى عاشوا حياة بسيطة.

They farmed, raised animals, and knew all their neighbors.

كانوا يزرعون، ويربون الحيوانات، ويعرفون جميع جيرانهم.

Salma : And city life was different.

وحياة المدينة كانت مختلفة.

People lived in tall buildings, used cars and buses, and had shops everywhere.

كان الناس يعيشون في مباني عالية، ويستخدمون السيارات والحافلات، وكانت المحلات في كل مكان.

Maha : Exactly. I realized every place had advantages and challenges.

بالضبط، أدركت أن كل مكان له مميزات وتحديات.

Salma : Yes, the project helped us understand how people adapted to their environments.

نعم، ساعدنا المشروع على فهم كيف تأقلم الناس مع بيئاتهم.



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) fales:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Our teacher asked us to do a project.	☐	☐
2. People in the city live in tall buildings.	☐	☐
3. In the village, people farm and raise animals.	☐	☐
4. Every place has advantages and challenges.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The is everything around us, like air, water, land, and animals.

- a** project **b** village **c** environment **d** desert

2. A tall can have many floors where people live or work.

- a** tent **b** building **c** camel **d** river

3. A is a big place with many people, cars, and tall buildings.

- a** farm **b** oasis **c** village **d** city

4. A is a small place where people live together.

- a** well **b** village **c** city **d** desert

5. In the desert, we can find a/an with water, plants, and trees.

- a** road **b** building **c** oasis **d** shop

6. The Nile flows through Egypt.

- a** park **b** city **c** river **d** mountain

7. People in the travel on camels and live in tents.

- a** river **b** desert **c** city **d** village

8. People in the desert get water from a

- a** school **b** well **c** shop **d** building

9. People in the city face some like traffic and noise.

- a** tents **b** buildings **c** rivers **d** challenges

10. Our teacher asked us to do a last week.

- a** letter **b** project **c** story **d** game

11. People in the desert live in a

- a** car **b** tent **c** building **d** shop

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

special - desert - village - buildings - work

Last week, our teacher asked us to do a project about different places. I learned about life in the city and life in the ❶ People in the city live in tall ❷ and use cars and buses. In the ❸, people live in tents, travel on camels, and use wells for water. Every place is ❹ and has advantages and challenges.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last week, Mr. Samir asked the class to do a project about different places where people live. I learned about life in a city, a village, and the desert. In the city, people like Lina and Omar live in tall buildings. They go to school by bus or car. There are many shops, parks, and playgrounds.

In the village, people like Youssef and Mona live in small houses. They grow vegetables, take care of animals, and know all the people in their village.

In the desert, people like Tarek live in tents. They ride camels and get water from wells. Life is different, but people are happy in their homes. Every place has good things and hard things. I learned that people adapt to their life.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People in the city live in and go to school by bus or car.

- a** tents **b** tall buildings **c** small houses **d** schools

2. People in the desert get water from

- a** rivers **b** wells **c** shops **d** canals

Unit 1 This is Where I Live

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Name one thing people do in the village.

4. Who are two people mentioned in the city?

5. What did you learn from the project about how people live in different places?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what was the project about

2. people in the desert traveled on camels

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Different environments

village - city - desert

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



village	قرية	oasis	واحة
city	مدينة	market	سوق
fresh	طازج	friendly	ودود
forest	غابة	houses	بيوت

Other words كلمات أخرى

weather	الطقس	clean	نظيف
sunny	شمس	travelers	مسافرون
excited	متحمس	sellers	باعة
cold	بارد	streets	شوارع
rainy	ممطر	people	ناس / أشخاص
quiet	هادئ		

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

last weekend	نهاية الأسبوع الماضي	not far from	ليس بعيداً عن
near the city	بالقرب من المدينة	in the afternoon	في فترة بعد الظهر
beside the river	بجانب النهر	listened to	استمع إلى
compared to	مقارنة بـ		

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

visit	يزور
walk	يمشي
notice	يلاحظ
smell	يشم
enjoy	يستمتع

Past ماضٍ

visited
walked
noticed
smelled
enjoyed

Present مضارع

be	يكون
take	يأخذ
buy	يشترى
find	يجد
hear	يسمع
tell	يخبر
learn	يتعلم

Past ماضٍ

was / were
took
bought
found
heard
told
learnt / learned

Study the following

1 Last weekend, Ahmed and Omar visited a small village near the city.

- في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي، زار أحمد وعمر قرية صغيرة بالقرب من المدينة.

2 The weather was sunny, and they were excited.

- كان الطقس مشمسًا، وكانوا متحمسين جدًا.

3 They walked beside the river and noticed how clean and fresh the air was.

- مشوا بجانب النهر ولاحظوا كم كان الهواء نظيفًا ومنعشًا.

4 Omar took photos of houses, trees, and the clear water.

- التقط عمر صورًا للبيوت والأشجار والماء النظيف.

5 Ahmed smelled the colorful flowers beside the path.

- شم أحمد الزهور الملونة بجانب الطريق.

6 Not far from the village, they saw a small forest with tall trees and many birds.

- ليس بعيدًا عن القرية، رأوا غابة صغيرة بها أشجار عالية والعديد من الطيور.

7 A farmer told them a story about an oasis in the desert.

- قص عليهم فلاح قصة عن واحة في الصحراء.

8 In the afternoon, they went to the market and bought fresh fruit.

- في فترة بعد الظهر، ذهبوا إلى السوق واشتروا فاكهة طازجة.

9 The sellers were friendly and told them stories about village life.

- كان الباعة ودودين وأخبروهم قصصًا عن الحياة في القرية.

10 Ahmed and Omar enjoyed the quiet streets and listened to birds singing.

- استمتع أحمد وعمر بالشوارع الهادئة واستمعوا إلى تغريد الطيور.

11 They learned many new things about the people who lived there.

- تعلموا أشياء جديدة كثيرة عن الناس الذين يعيشون هناك.

1 Listen and read:

استمع وأقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:



يوم في القرية A Day in the Village

Last weekend, Ahmed and Omar visited a small village near the city. The weather was sunny. They were excited.

في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي، زار أحمد وعمر قرية صغيرة بالقرب من المدينة. كان الطقس مشمسًا، وكانوا متحمسين جدًا.

They walked beside the river and noticed how clean and fresh the air was compared to the busy city.

مشوا بجانب النهر ولاحظوا كم كان الهواء نظيفًا
ومنعشًا مقارنة بالمدينة المزدحمة.

Omar took photos of houses, trees, and the clear water. Ahmed smelled the colorful flowers beside the path.

التقط عمر صورًا للبيوت والأشجار والماء النظيف.
شم أحمد الزهور الملونة بجانب الطريق.

Not far from the village, they saw a small forest with tall trees and many birds.

ليس بعيدًا عن القرية، رأوا غابة صغيرة بها أشجار
عالية والعديد من الطيور.

A farmer told them a story about an oasis in the desert where travelers could find water and rest.

قص عليهم فلاح قصة عن واحة في الصحراء حيث يمكن للمسافرين أن يجدوا الماء ويرتاحوا.

In the afternoon, they went to the market and bought fresh fruit such as apples, oranges, and bananas.

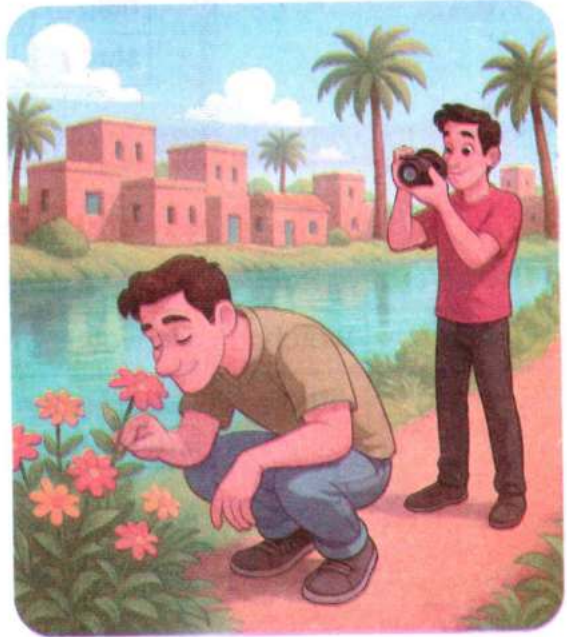
في فترة بعد الظهر، ذهبوا إلى السوق واشتروا فاكهة طازجة مثل التفاح والبرتقال والموز.

The sellers were friendly and told them stories about village life.

كان الباعة ودودين وأخبروهم قصصًا عن الحياة في القرية.

Ahmed and Omar enjoyed the quiet streets, listened to birds singing, and learned many new things about the people who lived there.

استمتع أحمد وعمر بالشوارع الهادئة، واستمعوا إلى تغريد الطيور، وتعلموا أشياء جديدة كثيرة عن الناس الذين يعيشون هناك.



Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Past Tense الزمن الماضي البسيط

Usage: الاستخدام

يستخدم الزمن الماضي البسيط للحديث عن الأفعال التي حدثت بالفعل في الماضي.

Form التكوين

يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل بإضافة **ied/ed/d** للأفعال المنتظمة والأفعال الغير منتظمة تحفظ كما هي:

love	→	lov ed
help	→	help ed
study	→	studi ed

Regular Verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

الأفعال المنتظمة تتكون عن طريق إضافة **-ed** إلى الفعل الأساسي (base verb).

Base Verb	Past	Example Sentence	الترجمة
watch	watch ed	We watch ed a movie last night.	شاهدنا فيلمًا الليلة الماضية.
study	studi ed	I studi ed the lesson before the exam.	درست الدرس قبل الامتحان.

ملاحظة هامة:

الأفعال غير المنتظمة لا تتبع قاعدة **-ed**، بل تتغير بشكل خاص في الماضي.

- see → saw run → ran

Irregular Verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

الأفعال غير المنتظمة لا تتبع قاعدة **-ed**، بل تتغير بشكل خاص في الماضي.

Base Verb	Past	Example Sentence	الترجمة
go	went	I went to the market yesterday.	ذهبت إلى السوق أمس.
buy	bought	My sister bought a gift for her friend.	اشتريت أختي هدية لصديقتها.

Keywords كلمات مفتاحية تدل على الماضي

غالبًا ما نستخدم كلمات معينة لتدل على أن الفعل حدث في الماضي، مثل:

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
yesterday	أمس	ago	منذ
last night / week / year	الليلة الماضية / الأسبوع الماضي / السنة الماضية	in 2000	في عام 2000
when I was young	عندما كنت صغيراً	earlier today	في وقت سابق اليوم
a few days ago	منذ عدة أيام		

لعبت كرة القدم أمس. - I played football **yesterday**.

Negative Form صيغة النفي

للتعبير عن شيء لم يحدث نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

مصدر الفعل **did not (didn't) + verb**

- I **didn't** watch TV yesterday.

لم أشاهد التلفاز أمس.

ملاحظة مهمة:

بعد **didn't** يبقى الفعل الأساسي في صورته الأصلية، ولا نضيف **-ed** حتى لو كان الفعل منتظماً.

Question Form صيغة السؤال

نطرح سؤال في الماضي نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

مصدر الفعل **Did + subject + verb** ؟

- **Did you go** to the park last week?

هل ذهبت إلى الحديقة الأسبوع الماضي؟

- **Did she help** her mother yesterday?

هل ساعدت والدتها أمس؟

وللاجابة نستخدم **Yes / No**:

- **Yes**, she did في الاثبات

- **No**, she didn't في النفي

ملاحظة مهمة:

الفعل (يكون **verb to be**) في الماضي يكون كالآتي:

I / He / She / It	→	was
You / We / They	→	were

النفي:

I / He / She / It	→	wasn't
You / We / They	→	weren't

1 Correct the underlined words in each sentence:

صحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1. We goes to the zoo last Sunday.
2. She buyed a new bag yesterday.
3. They didn't went to school.
4. He doesn't eat meat yesterday.
5. We was at the park last night.

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct past simple form of the verbs in brackets:

املا الفراغات بالفعل الماضي البسيط الصحيح من الصيغة الموجودة بين الاقواس:

1. We (walk) to the park yesterday.
2. She (buy) apples from the market last week.
3. They (play) football last Saturday.
4. Omar (eat) pizza two days ago.
5. I (visit) my grandparents last weekend.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. you call your cousin yesterday?

a Do	b Did	c Were	d Does
-------------	--------------	---------------	---------------
2. Did Kareem to Luxor last year?

a travels	b travelled	c travel	d travelling
------------------	--------------------	-----------------	---------------------
3. When she learn to ride a bike?

a doing	b do	c did	d were
----------------	-------------	--------------	---------------
4. Where you yesterday?

a was	b did	c were	d do
--------------	--------------	---------------	-------------

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Ahmed and Omar visited a desert last weekend.	☐	☐
2. They walked beside the river.	☐	☐
3. Ahmed smelled flowers beside the path.	☐	☐
4. The farmer told them a story about a city.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- A is a small place where people live together.
a school **b** village **c** forest **d** hospital
- A is full of tall buildings and many people.
a sea **b** market **c** city **d** river
- A is a large flow of water across the land.
a village **b** river **c** forest **d** street
- A has many trees and animals.
a forest **b** school **c** river **d** shop
- They in the forest last week.
a walked **b** walk **c** walks **d** walking
- My friend and I the river yesterday.
a visit **b** visited **c** visits **d** visiting
- She her friend a week ago.
a helped **b** help **c** helping **d** helps
- I the sunrise last Friday.
a watched **b** watch **c** watches **d** watching
- He fruits from the market last weekend.
a buy **b** bought **c** buying **d** buys

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

village - river - flowers - fresh - learned

Last weekend, Ahmed and Omar visited a small market near the city. They walked beside the ① and noticed the clean air. Ahmed smelled the colorful ② beside the path. In the afternoon, they went to the ③ and bought ④ fruit.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات ما بين الأقواس:

1. We (**walk**) to the park yesterday.
2. She (**buy**) apples from the market last week.
3. They (**play**) football last Saturday.
4. Omar (**didn't**) at the park two days ago.
5. I (**visit**) my grandparents last weekend.
6. She (**help**) her mother last holiday.
7. Ali (**go**) to bed at 10:00 p.m yesterday.
8. (**DO**) you sleep early yesterday?
9. Noura didn't (**studied**) the lesson.
10. We enjoyed the weather and (**see**) birds singing.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. the weather was sunny

2. what did the farmer tell them about

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



fisherman

صياد



palm trees

شجر النخيل



boat

قارب



sail

يبحر



riverbank

ضفة النهر



crops

محاصيل



Other words

كلمات أخرى

cucumbers

خيار

cheese

جبنة

vegetables

خضراوات

fruits

فاكهة

pizza

بيتزا

net

شبكة

the Nile River

نهر النيل

stories

قصص

green farms

حقول خضراء

history

تاريخ

children

اطفال

together

معا / سويا

bread

خبز

view

منظر طبيعي

Unit 1 This is Where I Live

Adjectives صفات

calm	هادئ	tired	متعب
tall	طويل	excited	متحمس
hot	ساخن / حار	boring	ممل
happy	سعيد		

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

on a trip	في رحلة	on the riverbank	على ضفة النهر
wake up early	يستيقظ مبكرًا	under a tree	تحت شجرة
take a boat	يركب قاربًا	at the end of the day	في نهاية اليوم
sail a boat	يُبحر بالقارب	go home	يذهب إلى المنزل
in the river	في النهر	learn new things	يتعلم أشياء جديدة
near the river	بالقرب من النهر	feel tired	يشعر بالتعب

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
help يُساعد	helped	go يذهب	went
plant يزرع	planted	see يرى	saw
play يلعب	played	eat يأكل	ate
learn يتعلم	learned	tell يحكي / يخبر	told
sail يُبحر	sailed	take يأخذ / يركب	took
visit يزور	visited	wear يرتدي	wore

Study the following

- Last Friday, Youssef went on a trip with his grandfather to the Nile River.
- يوم الجمعة الماضي، ذهب يوسف في رحلة مع جده إلى نهر النيل.
- They woke up early and took a small boat.
- استيقظا مبكرًا وركبا قاربًا صغيرًا.
- The water in the river was calm.
- كان الماء في النهر هادئًا.
- His grandfather showed him the green farms near the river.
- أراه جده المزارع الخضراء القريبة من النهر.
- Farmers plant crops, vegetables, and fruits there.
- يزرع المزارعون هناك المحاصيل والخضروات والفواكه.

7 They also saw tall palm trees and children playing on the riverbank.

- ورأوا أيضًا أشجار النخيل الطويلة والأطفال يلعبون على ضفة النهر.

8 They sat under a tree and ate bread, cheese, and cucumbers.

- جلسا تحت شجرة وأكلا خبزًا وجبنًا وخيارًا.

9 His grandfather told him stories about the history of the Nile.

- حكى له جده قصصًا عن تاريخ النيل.

10 Youssef was very happy because he learned many new things.

- كان يوسف سعيدًا جدًا لأنه تعلم أشياء جديدة كثيرة.

11 They felt tired but excited to visit the Nile again soon.

- شعرا بالتعب لكنهما كانا متحمسين لزيارة النيل مرة أخرى قريبًا.

1 Read the text:

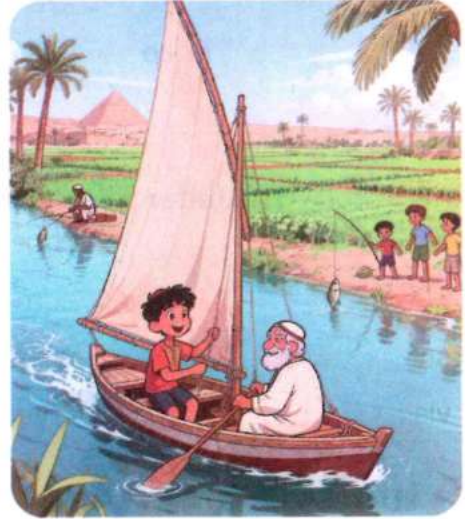
اقرأ النص:

استمع إلى النص:



A Day at the Riverbank يوم على ضفة النهر

Last Friday, Youssef went on a trip with his grandfather to the Nile River. They woke up early and took a small boat. He helped his grandfather sail. The water in the river was calm. Youssef saw fishermen catching fish. His grandfather showed him the green farms near the river where farmers plant crops, vegetables, and fruits. They also saw tall palm trees and children playing on the riverbank. Youssef wore his hat because the sun was hot. They sat under a tree and ate bread, cheese, and cucumbers. His grandfather told him stories about the history of the Nile. Youssef was very happy because he learned many new things. At the end of the day, they went home together, feeling tired but excited to visit the Nile again soon.



في يوم الجمعة الماضي، ذهب يوسف في رحلة مع جده إلى نهر النيل. استيقظوا مبكرًا وأخذوا قاربًا صغيرًا. ساعد جده في الإبحار. كان الماء في النهر هادئًا. رأى يوسف صيادين يصطادون السمك. أراه جده الحقول الخضراء قرب النهر حيث يزرع الفلاحون المحاصيل والخضروات والفواكه. كما رأوا أيضًا أشجار النخيل الطويلة والأطفال يلعبون على ضفة النهر. ارتدى يوسف قبعته لأن الشمس كانت حارة. جلسوا تحت شجرة وأكلوا خبزًا وجبنًا وخيارًا. أخبره جده قصصًا عن تاريخ النيل. كان يوسف سعيدًا جدًا لأنه تعلم أشياء جديدة كثيرة. في نهاية اليوم، عادوا إلى المنزل معًا، يشعرون بالتعب لكنهم متحمسون لزيارة النيل مرة أخرى قريبًا.



Pronunciation

Silent Letters (k,l) الحروف الساكنة (k,l)

- Silent letters are letters we write but we don't say when we read the word.
الحروف الصامتة هي الحروف التي نكتبها ولكن لا نطقها عندما نقرأ الكلمة.

⦿ **Silent K** (k غير منطوقة)

⦿ **Rule:** The letter "k" is silent when it comes before "n" at the beginning of a word.

عندما يأتي حرف k قبل n في أول الكلمة لا ينطق!

استمع إلى المفردات:



Silent K



knee

ركبة



knife

سكين



knock

يطرق



know

يعرف

⦿ **Rule:** The letter "l" is silent in some words - especially after a or o.

عندما يأتي "l" بعد "a" أو "o" لا ينطق أحياناً.

Silent L



walk

يمشي



talk

يتحدث



half

نصف



should

يتبغي

Fill in the missing letters:

املا الفراغات بالحروف الناقصة:

1 wa _ k

2 _ _ nife

3 shou _ d

4 _ nee

5 ha _ f

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Youssef went on a trip with his brother.	☐	☐
2. The water in the river was calm.	☐	☐
3. They sat under a tree and ate their food.	☐	☐
4. Youssef felt angry because he learned many new things.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- They a small boat on the Nile.
 a play b eat c sing d take
- The fishermen their boats on the river.
 a build b paint c sail d wash
- Farmers work the river.
 a above b of c under d near
- We go to school to
 a eat b sleep
 c learn new things d play games
- When I get a gift, I feel
 a tired b bored c happy d angry
- A uses a net to catch fish.
 a driver b farmer c fisherman d teacher
- Farmers plant in green farms.
 a toys b crops c chairs d nets
- We eat bread, cheese, and for lunch.
 a books b nets c pens d cucumbers
- The palm trees are very
 a tired b calm c tall d short

Unit 1 This is Where I Live

10. The weather is in summer.

a boring

b hot

c happy

d tall

11. The story was, not fun.

a calm

b happy

c boring

d exciting

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

املا الفراغات مستخدماً الكلمات من القائمة:

boat – fisherman – riverbank – sail – palm trees

On a warm summer morning, Sara went on a short trip with her grandmother to the Nile. They took a small boat on the water. Not far away, a ① was catching fish with his net. After their ride, Sara and her grandmother walked along the ② and enjoyed the beautiful view. During the trip, her grandmother taught her how to ③ safely. Near the water, they saw tall ④ moving gently in the breeze.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

On Saturday morning, Faten went to the zoo with her mother. They woke up early, and Faten wore her hat because it was sunny. She saw many animals, such as lions, giraffes, and elephants. Birds were singing on the trees.

Faten helped her mother feed some animals. She also saw children playing in the nearby playground. Faten and her mother sat under a big tree and ate cheese and honey sandwiches.

Her mother told her stories about the animals and their homes. Faten was very happy because she learned new things about animals and nature. At the end of the visit, Faten and her mother went home, smiling and a little tired.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Faten and her mother went to

a school

b park

c zoo

d hospital

2. Faten wore her hat because

a It was raining

b It was sunny

c It was cold

d She was bored

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Name two animals Faten saw at the zoo.

4. How did Faten help her mother at the zoo?

5. How did Faten feel at the end of the visit, and why?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. do you know my friend

2. his grandfather told him stories

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A day at the riverbank

trip - calm - tree

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



fields	حقول	relaxed	مسترخي
peaceful	هادئ	path	ممر
distance	مسافة بعيدة		

Other words كلمات أخرى

mountain	جبل	rocks	صخور
weekend	عطلة نهاية الاسبوع	sound	صوت شيء
the weather	الطقس	oasis	واحة
headings	العناوين	stream	جدول مائي
clear water	مياه صافية		

Adjectives صفات

cold	بارد	big	كبير
beautiful	جميل	gentle	هادئ/ لطيف
tall	طويل	happy	سعيد
green	أخضر	delicious	لذيذ
wide	واسع	wonderful	رائع

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

on that day	في ذلك اليوم	near the mountains	قرب الجبال
between the rocks	بين الصخور	take photos of	يلتقط صورًا لـ
in the distance	في البعيد	shared stories	شاركوا قصصًا
far from the city	بعيدًا عن المدينة		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

hope	يأمل
want	يريد
walk	يمشي
stop	يتوقف
share	يشارك
pack	يحزم (الحقائب)

Past ماض

hoped
wanted
walked
stopped
shared
packed

Present مضارع

see	يرى
make	يصنع / يجعل
feel	يشعر
eat	يأكل
be	يكون

Past ماض

saw
made
felt
ate
was / were

Study the following

1 I went to the mountains last weekend.

- ذهبت إلى الجبال في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضي.

2 On that day, the weather was cold.

- في ذلك اليوم، كان الطقس بارداً.

3 The view was very beautiful.

- كان المنظر جميلاً جداً.

4 I saw a big stream flowing gently between the rocks.

- رأيت جدولاً كبيراً يتدفق بهدوء بين الصخور.

5 The sound of the water made the place peaceful.

- جعل صوت الماء المكان هادئاً.

6 We walked on small paths.

- سرنّا على ممرات صغيرة.

7 We stopped to take photos of the birds.

- توقفنا لالتقاط صور للطيور.

8 The birds were singing in the distance.

- كانت الطيور تغني في البعيد.

9 We were far from the city.

- كنا بعيدين عن المدينة.

10 I felt happy and relaxed.

- شعرت بالسعادة والاسترخاء.

11 At night, we sat near the mountains.

- في الليل، جلسنا قرب الجبال.

12 My mother packed the fruits for us.

- حضرت والدتي الفواكه لنا.



دليل كتابة الرسالة الودية

كتابة الرسالة الودية تعني كتابة رسالة لصديق أو شخص تحبه، لتخبره بأخبارك أو بمغامرتك أو بأي أحداث ممتعة. يمكن اتباع الخطوات التالية:

1 Greeting

التهية

تبدأ الرسالة بكلمة **Dear** + اسم الصديق:

- Dear Lina,

- ملاحظة: ضع فاصلة بعد الاسم.

2 Introduction

المقدمة

في المقدمة، أخبر صديقك بسبب كتابتك للرسالة.

- I hope you are doing well.

أتمنى أن تكون بخير.

- I want to tell you about my trip last weekend. أود أن أخبرك عن رحلتي في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضي.

3 Body

المحتوى

في هذه الفقرة، تكتب تفاصيل أو قصص ما حدث معك.

يمكن استخدام كلمات من **Word Bank**:

كلمات المشاعر	كلمات الزمن
happy سعيد	yesterday أمس
excited متحمس	last week الأسبوع الماضي
tired متعب	on Friday يوم الجمعة

كلمات الأفعال	
helped ساعد	went ذهب
made صنع	saw رأى
enjoyed استمتع	played لعب
took أخذت	visited زار

- Last Friday, I went to the mountains. I saw tall green trees and played with my friends. I felt very happy.

يوم الجمعة الماضي ذهبت إلى الجبال. رأيت أشجاراً خضراء طويلة ولعبت مع أصدقائي. شعرت بسعادة كبيرة.

4 Closing

الخاتمة

اختم الرسالة بطريقة لطيفة لتشجيع صديقك على الرد.

أمثلة على كلمات الخاتمة:

Write back soon	أكتب لي قريباً	Your friend	صديقك
See you soon	أراك قريباً	Best wishes	أطيب التمنيات

مثال:

أكتب لي قريباً،
صديقك،
سارة

- Write back soon,
Your friend,
Sara

5 Signature

التوقيع

في نهاية الرسالة، اكتب اسمك بعد الإخاتمة.

ملاحظة هامة:

- ١ - استخدم جملاً قصيرة وواضحة.
- ٢ - عبّر عن مشاعرك وأحداثك بطريقة ممتعة.
- ٣ - احرص على ترتيب الرسالة كالآتي:

التحية ← المقدمة ← المحتوى ← الإخاتمة ← التوقيع

Read and learn:

اقرأ وتعلم:

استمع إلى النص:



Dear Lina,

I hope you are doing well. I want to tell you more about my trip to the mountains last weekend. On that day, the weather was cold, but the view was so beautiful. I saw tall green trees, wide fields, and a big stream flowing gently between the rocks. The sound of the water made the place feel peaceful. We walked on small paths and stopped to take photos of the birds that were singing in the distance. Although we were far from the city, I felt happy and relaxed. At night, we sat near the mountains, and shared stories. I ate some delicious fruits that my mother packed. It was truly a wonderful trip, and I wished you were with me.

Your friend,

Sara



عزيزتي لينا

أمل أن تكوني بخير. أريد أن أخبرك المزيد عن رحلتي إلى الجبال في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي. في ذلك اليوم، كان الطقس بارداً، لكن المنظر كان جميلاً جداً. رأيت أشجاراً خضراء طويلة، وحقولاً واسعة، وجدولاً كبيراً يتدفق بلحلف بين الصخور. صوت الماء جعل المكان يشعر بالسلم. مشينا على مسارات صغيرة وتوقفنا لالتقاط صور للطيور التي كانت تغني في البعد. على الرغم من أننا كنا بعيدين عن المدينة، شعرت بالسعادة والاسترخاء. في الليل، جلسنا قرب الجبال، وتشاركنا القصص. أكلت بعض الفواكه اللذيذة التي حضرتها أُمي. لقد كانت حقاً رحلة رائعة، وتمنيت لو كنت معي.

صديقتك،

سارة

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	T	F
1. The trip took place yesterday.	☐	☐
2. The weather during the trip was rainy.	☐	☐
3. The writer saw cars and buses in the mountains.	☐	☐
4. The stream was flowing gently between the rocks.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The farmer works in the every morning.
a mountains **b** fields **c** rocks **d** schools
- The weather was and everyone enjoyed the day.
a big **b** peaceful **c** bad **d** distance
- They followed the small to the top of the hill.
a bus **b** bank **c** path **d** basket
- The girl said the fruit was very
a delicious **b** tall **c** cold **d** wide
- From the mountain, they can see a village in the
a cold **b** distance **c** hot **d** rocks

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

hope - trees - exciting - fun - walked

I want to tell you about my trip to the oasis. It was very ① I saw tall ②, and clear water. The oasis was quiet and peaceful, but it was also ③ to see so many new things. I ④ we can go together one day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

Last weekend, Sara went on a trip to the mountains with her family. The weather was cold, but the view was amazing. She saw tall green trees, colorful flowers, and a small stream. Sara took many photos of the birds and the beautiful fields. She ate some sandwiches and juicy fruits near the stream. In the evening, they sat under a big tree and listened to her father's stories about the mountains. Sara felt very happy and relaxed. She wished her best friend, Lina, was there with her to enjoy the trip.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sara went on the trip to the mountains with her
 a friends b family c books d buses
2. Sara ate..... near the stream.
 a pizza and cheese b sandwiches and fruits
 c bread and cucumbers d ice cream

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Sara see in the mountains?

4. How did Sara feel during the trip?

5. What's the main idea of the passage?

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

Your trip to the mountains

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

water - singing - stream

Review



on Unit 1



environment

البيئة



building

مبنى / بناء



city

مدينة



village

قرية



oasis

واحة



river

نهر



well

بئر مياه



project

مشروع



desert

صحراء



palm trees

شجر النخيل



boat



sail

قارب



riverbank

ضفة النهر



crops

محاصيل

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Past Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

1 Usage: الاستخدام

يستخدم الزمن الماضي البسيط للحديث عن الأفعال التي حدثت بالفعل في الماضي.

2 Form: التكوين

يتكون الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل بإضافة **led/ed/d** للأفعال المنتظمة والأفعال الغير منتظمة تحفظ كما هي:

love → lov**ed**

help → help**ed**

study → studi**ed**

see → saw

swim → swam

3 Negative Form: صيغة النفي

للتعبير عن شيء لم يحدث نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

did not (didn't) + verb مصدر الفعل

- I **didn't** watch TV yesterday

لم أشاهد التلفاز أمس.

4 Question Form صيغة السؤال

● اطرح سؤال في الماضي نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Did + subject + verb مصدر الفعل ؟

- Did you go to the park last week?

هل ذهبت إلى الحديقة الأسبوع الماضي؟

5 Key words الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	ago	منذ
last night / week / year	الليلة الماضية / الأسبوع الماضي / السنة الماضية	in 2000	في تاريخ سابق (في عام ٢٠٠٠)
when I was young	عندما كنت صغيراً	earlier today	في وقت سابق اليوم
a few days ago	منذ عدة أيام		

 Pronunciation

Silent K



knee

ركبة



knife

سكين



knock

يطرق



know

يعرف

عندما يأتي حرف **k** في أول الكلمة قبل **n** ينطق

Silent L



walk

يمشي



talk

يتحدث



half

نصف



should

ينبغي

عندما يأتي "l" بعد "a" أو "o" لا ينطق أحياناً.



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Different environments

People live in different environments. Some people live in villages. Some people live in the city. Other people live in the desert .Every place is special and has advantages and challenges.

2

Lesson 3

A day at the riverbank

Last Friday, I went on a trip with my grandfather to the Nile River. We woke up early and took a small boat. I helped my grandfather sail. The water in the river was calm. I saw fishermen catching fish.

3

Lessons 4&5

Your trip to the mountains

I want to tell you about my trip to the mountains last weekend. On that day, the weather was cold, but the view was so beautiful. I saw tall green trees, wide fields, and a big stream flowing between the rocks.

4

Test - Unit 1

Your visit to a village

On weekends, I visit my uncle in his village. I enjoy the clean and fresh water. I take photos of houses, trees, flowers and animals. I see farmers working in the fields. I spend happy times in the village.

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Salma is in primary (three - five - four)
2. Salma lives in a (city - village - desert)
3. Salma's father grows (roads - vegetables - deserts)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

city - do - live - tall

- A : Where do you ① ?
- B : I live in a ②
- A : Do you live in a ③ building?
- B : Yes, I ④

C- Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A small boat in the river yesterday.
 a sails b sailed c sail d sailing
2. Farmers grow many
 a boats b crops c rivers d cars
3. A / An is a green place with water in the desert.
 a building b city c oasis d school
4. you hurt your knee last week?
 a Do b Are c Did d Doing

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes: اقرأ وصحح الكلمة التي تحتها خط:

1. Does you finish the project last week?
2. I didn't saw Amr yesterday.
3. They was at the park last holiday.
4. She visited her aunt tomorrow.

D- Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last week, Jana and Omar visited a small village near Benha. The weather was sunny. They were excited. They walked beside the river. The river was clean and the air was fresh. Omar took photos of animals and green fields. Jana bought fruits from the market. The sellers were friendly. Jana and Omar smelled colorful flowers near the Nile.

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

	T	F
1. Jana and Omar visited the village last year.	☐	☐
2. They bought fruits from the market.	☐	☐

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. The sellers were
 a bad b tall c friendly d greedy
4. They smelled
 a books b flowers c pens d trash
5. The opposite of the word "clean" is
 a clear b dirty c tall d big

E- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of four sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية قصيرة من (4) أربع جمل عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Your trip to the mountains

weather - peaceful - relaxed - delicious

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 1

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Amr is in primary five.

2. Amr lives in a big city.

3. The city has tall buildings.

4. Amr goes to the park every Thursday.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A is a small place where people live together.

a river

b city

c village

d shop

2. The Nile River through Egypt.

a plays

b flows

c eats

d wakes

3. Sara three sandwiches yesterday.

a ate

b eat

c eats

d eating

4. Hazem at Cairo last weekend.

a were

b did

c was

d didn't

5. The teacher us homework a few days ago.

a give

b gave

c gives

d giving

6. Farmers animals and farmed in the fields.

a played

b wrote

c raised

d learned

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

raised - camels - desert - tents - realized

I'm Amina. I'm doing a project in my school about comparing life in the desert with life in the village. I wrote about the ① I explained how people lives in ②, traveled on ③ People in the village lived simply. They farmed, ④ animals, and knew all their neighbors.

Unit 1 This is Where I Live

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Lina. My sister and I went to the beach last weekend. We walked along the beach and collected some colorful seashells. I also watched the birds flying above the water. The sound of the waves made me feel relaxed. We sat under an umbrella and ate sandwiches and fresh fruit. It was a very fun day, and I learned a lot about the sea and the animals that live there. At the end of the day, we went home tired but happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Lina went to the last weekend.
a mountains **b** beach **c** zoo **d** park
2. Lina feel relaxed because of
a the sand **b** the sound of the waves
c the sandwiches **d** the birds

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Name two things Lina saw at the beach.
4. What did Lina do while walking on the beach?
5. How did Lina feel at the end of the day?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:
1. We (**take**) photos yesterday.
 2. We (**are**) at the park last night.
 3. Amr didn't (**went**) to school.
 4. She (**doesn't**) eat meat yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم الآتية:

1. where did you go on holiday - - - - -
2. i played tennis yesterday - - - - -

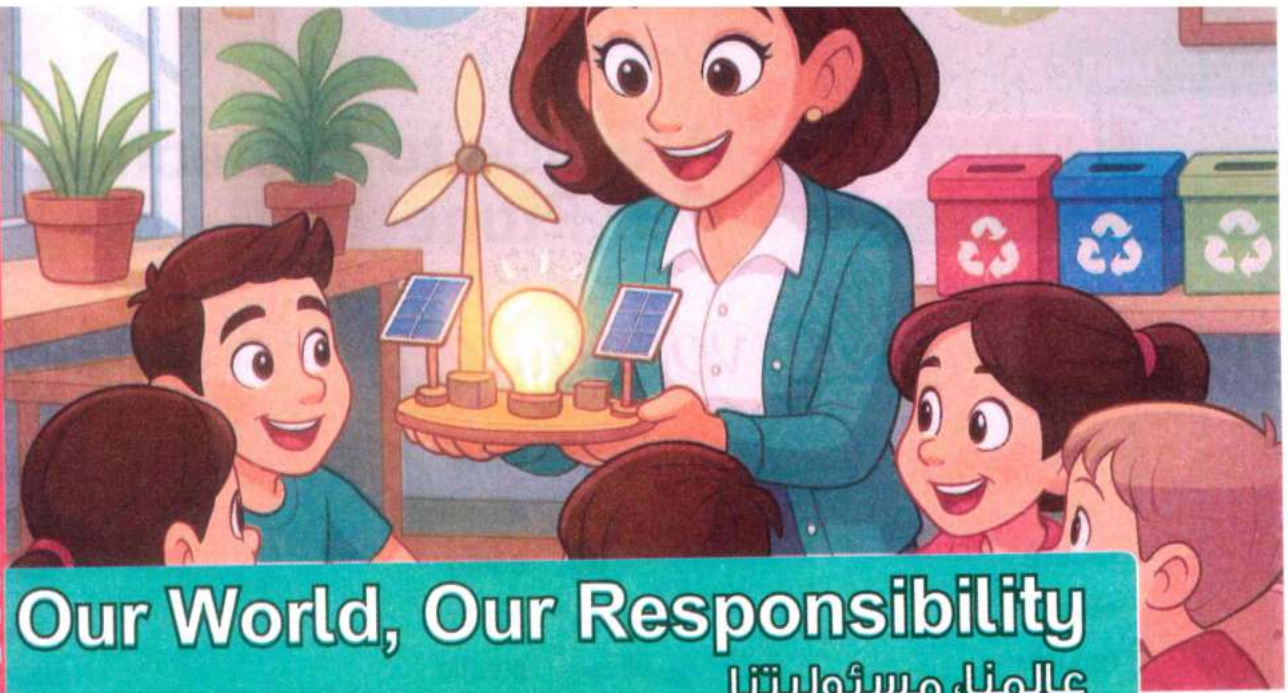
7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

مجاها عنه آخر الوحدة

Your visit to a village

clean - farmers - fields



Our World, Our Responsibility

عالمنا، مسئوليتنا

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- The student talks about ways to protect the planet using simple sentences.
يتحدث الطالب عن طرق حماية الكوكب باستخدام جمل بسيطة.
- The student uses conjunctions correctly in short spoken sentences.
يستخدم الطالب أدوات الربط بشكل صحيح في الجمل القصيرة المنطوقة.
- The student pronounces r-controlled words correctly in speech.
ينطق الطالب الكلمات التي تحتوي على الحرف (r) بشكل صحيح أثناء الكلام.

Listening:

- The student listens carefully to texts and dialogs about how to go green and protect the planet.
يستمع الطالب بعناية إلى النصوص والحوارات حول كيفية أن تكون صديقاً للبيئة وحماية الكوكب.
- The student identifies key details such as actions, reasons, and effects related to protecting the environment.
يحدد الطالب التفاصيل الأساسية مثل الأفعال، والأسباب، والنتائج المتعلقة بحماية البيئة.
- The student recognizes and understands r-controlled words in spoken sentences.
يتعرف الطالب ويفهم الكلمات التي تحتوي على الحرف (r) في الجمل المنطوقة.
- The student identifies the use of conjunctions in short dialogs or instructions.
يحدد الطالب استخدام أدوات الربط في الحوارات أو التعليمات القصيرة.

Reading:

- The student reads short texts and dialogs about going green and understands the main ideas.
يقرأ الطالب نصوصاً وحوارات قصيرة عن الحفاظ على البيئة ويفهم الأفكار الرئيسية.
- The student recognizes vocabulary related to environmental actions.
يتعرف الطالب على المفردات المتعلقة بالأعمال البيئية.
- The student identifies r-controlled words in texts.
يحدد الطالب الكلمات التي تحتوي على الحرف (r) في النصوص.
- The student recognizes and understands the use of conjunctions in sentences.
يتعرف الطالب ويفهم استخدام أدوات الربط في الجمل.

The student reads sample emails and identifies the greeting, body, and closing.

يقرأ الطالب رسائل إلكترونية نموذجية ويحدد التحية، والمضمون، والخاتمة.

Writing:

- The student writes short sentences or paragraphs about ways to protect the environment.
يكتب الطالب جملًا أو فقرات قصيرة عن طرق حماية البيئة.
- The student uses r-controlled words correctly in sentences.
يستخدم الطالب الكلمات التي تحتوي على الحرف (r) بشكل صحيح في الجمل.
- The student writes sentences using correct conjunctions.
يكتب الطالب جملًا مستخدمًا أدوات الربط الصحيحة.
- The student writes a simple email including a greeting, a few sentences about a topic, and a closing.
يكتب الطالب رسالة إلكترونية بسيطة تتضمن تحية، وعدة جمل عن موضوع معين، وخاتمة.
- The student creates a brochure about going green.
ينشئ الطالب مطوية عن الحفاظ على البيئة.

Lesson

1

★ A Guide to Protecting Our Planet

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



planet	كوكب	water	الماء
clean	نظيف	electricity	الكهرباء
reduce	يقلل	bottle	زجاجة
reuse	يعيد استخدام	paper	ورق
recycle	يعيد التدوير	plastic	بلاستيك
3Rs	القواعد الثلاث (التقليل - إعادة الاستخدام - إعادة التدوير)	apply	يطبق

Other words كلمات أخرى

class	الصف / الفصل	old	قديم
things	الأشياء	new	جديد
again	مرة أخرى	refilling	إعادة التعبئة

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	
avoid	يتجنب
clean	ينظف
waste	يهدر / يضيع
use	يستخدم
reuse	يعيد الاستخدام
recycle	يعيد التدوير
apply	يطبق
learn	يتعلم
need	يحتاج

Past ماضٍ

avoided
cleaned
wasted
used
reused
recycled
applied
learned
needed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
mean	يعني
do	يفعل
have	يملك / لديه
make	يصنع
stand (for)	
	يرمز إلى / يعني
throw (away)	
	يرمي / يتخلص من
be (am / is / are)	
	يكون

Past ماضٍ

meant
did
had
made
stood for
threw away
was / were

Prepositions & Phrasal Verbs

الأفعال مع حروف الجر

stand for	يرمز إلى / يعني	at home	في المنزل
talk about	يتحدث عن	instead of	بدلاً من
throw away	يرمي / يتخلص من	talk with	يتحدث مع
turn into	يحول إلى	learn from	يتعلم من
apply at	يطبق في	care for	يعتني بـ / يهتم بـ
at school	في المدرسة	keep our planet clean	نحافظ على كوكبنا نظيف

Definitions تعريفات

planet الكوكب	The place where we all live; we must keep it clean and safe. المكان الذي نعيش فيه جميعاً، ويجب أن نحافظ عليه نظيفاً وآمناً.
reduce يقلل	Using less of something, like water or electricity, to avoid waste. استخدام كمية أقل من شيء ما، مثل الماء أو الكهرباء، لتجنب الهدر.
reuse يعيد استخدام	Using something again instead of throwing it away. استخدام الشيء مرة أخرى بدلاً من رميه.
recycle يعيد التدوير	Turning old materials into new things, like paper, plastic, or metal. تحويل المواد القديمة إلى أشياء جديدة مثل الورق أو البلاستيك أو المعدن.
apply يطبق	To use something you know in a situation. استخدام ما تعرفه أو تعلمته في موقف ما.

Study the following

1 Today we will learn how to keep our planet clean.

- اليوم سنتعلم كيف نحافظ على كوكبنا نظيفاً.

2 We can do this by using the 3Rs.

- يمكننا فعل ذلك باستخدام القواعد الثلاث (3Rs).

3 The 3Rs stand for Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle.

- القواعد الثلاث تعني: تقليل، تعيد الاستخدام، وتعيد التدوير.

4 Reduce means using less.

- التقليل يعني أن نستخدم أقل.

5 Don't waste water or electricity.

- لا تهدر الماء أو الكهرباء.

6 Reuse means using things again.

- تعيد الاستخدام تعني أن نستخدم الأشياء مرة أخرى.

7 Refilling a bottle instead of throwing it away.

- إعادة تعبئة الزجاجة من جديد بدلاً من رميها.

8 Recycle means turning old things into new ones.

- تعيد التدوير تعني تحويل الأشياء القديمة إلى أشياء جديدة.

10 You should apply what we learn at school and at home.

- يجب أن تطبق ما تتعلمه في المدرسة وفي المنزل.

11 Let's all work together to keep our planet clean!

- دعونا جميعاً نعمل معاً للحفاظ على كوكبنا نظيفاً!

Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:



Caring for Our Planet

العناية بكوكبنا

Teacher : Good morning, class! Today we'll talk about how to keep our planet clean using the 3Rs.

المعلمة: صباح الخير يا صف! اليوم سنتحدث عن كيفية الحفاظ على كوكبنا نظيفاً باستخدام مبادئ الـ 3Rs.

Students : What are the 3Rs, Miss?

الطلاب: ما هي الـ 3Rs يا معلمة؟

Teacher : They stand for Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle.

المعلمة: تعني تقليل، وتعيد الاستخدام، وتعيد التدوير.

Salim : What does Reduce mean?

سالم: ماذا يعني "تقليل"؟

Teacher : It means using less. For example, don't waste water or electricity.

المعلمة: يعني استخدام كمية أقل. على سبيل المثال، عدم إضاعة الماء أو الكهرباء.

Farouk : And Reuse?

فاروق: وماذا عن "تعيد الاستخدام"؟

Teacher : It means using things again—like refilling a bottle instead of throwing it away.

المعلمة: يعني استخدام الأشياء مرة أخرى—مثل إعادة تعبئة الزجاجة بدلاً من رميها.

Omar : What about "Recycle"?

عمر: وماذا عن "تعيد التدوير"؟

Teacher : That's when we turn old things into new ones, like paper or plastic. Remember, class, you should apply what you learned today at school and at home to keep our planet clean!

المعلمة: هذا عندما نحول الأشياء القديمة إلى جديدة، مثل الورق أو البلاستيك. تذكروا يا صف، يجب أن تطبقوا ما تعلمتموه اليوم

في المدرسة وفي المنزل للحفاظ على كوكبنا نظيفاً!

Students : We will, Miss!

الطلاب: سنفعل ذلك يا معلمة!



A Circle the correct answer:

ضع دائرة على الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. What is the main idea of the 3Rs?

☐ a how to play games at school

☐ b how to keep our planet clean

☐ c how to do homework quickly

☐ d how to recycle clothes only

2. What does "Reduce" mean?

☐ a to use more things

☐ b to throw things away

☐ c to use less and avoid waste

☐ d to buy new items

3. What did the teacher ask students to do at the end of the lesson?

☐ a forget the 3Rs

☐ b apply what they learned at school and at home

☐ c write a story about recycling

☐ d bring bottles to class

B Answer the following questions

اجب عما يلي:

4. Why is it important to apply the 3Rs every day? -----

5. Can you think of one way to reuse something in your school or home? -----

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We should keep our clean.
 a planet b litter c paper d plastic
- The 3Rs are, Reuse, and Recycle.
 a Reduce b Water c Electricity d Bottle
- We can a bottle by using it again.
 a reuse b reduce c replay d clean
- We can old paper and plastic to make new things.
 a Recycle b rearrange c refuse d apply
- Using less water and electricity is called
 a Reduce b repair c replay d clean
- A can be refilled instead of throwing it away.
 a bottle b paper c book d planet
- We should recycle and plastic.
 a paper b air c electricity d class
- Keeping the planet clean helps all people and animals
 a live b drink c throw d reduce
- The 3Rs help us protect our
 a planet b bottle c water d paper

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

recycle – play – reuse – planet – apply

Sara wants to help the Earth. She knows that if people want to protect the
 1, they must reduce the waste they produce. She also tries to
 2 old bottles and bags at home. At school, her teacher asked the class
 to 3 what they learned about the 3Rs. Sara now helps her friends
 learn how to 4 paper and plastic.

Unit 2 Our World, Our Responsibility

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Many families try to keep the environment clean by using the 3Rs. The 3Rs are Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle. Reduce means using less, like turning off lights to save electricity or closing the tap to save water. Reuse means using things again, such as washing glass jars and using them to store food. Recycle means changing old items into new ones, like recycling paper, plastic, and metal. When people use the 3Rs at home, in parks, and in their neighborhoods, they help protect nature. Small actions can keep the environment healthy and safe for everyone.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Reduce means using

a more

b less

c later

d quickly

2. People can recycle things like

a paper

b animals

c clothes

d water

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What are the 3Rs mentioned in the text?

4. Give one example of reusing something.

5. How do small actions help the environment?

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what does reduce mean

2. we ll talk about how to keep our planet clean.

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Caring for our planet

reuse - reduce - recycle



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



tote bag

حقيبة قماشية



go green

الحفاظ على البيئة /
صديق للبيئة



pollution

تلوث



litter

نفايات / قمامة

surroundings

البيئة المحيطة

bin

سلة قمامة



Other words

كلمات أخرى

both

كلا

email

بريد إلكتروني

sides

جوانب

paper letters

خطابات ورقية

page

صفحة

shopping

التسوق

others

الآخرون

green

أخضر / صديق للبيئة

safe

آمن

healthy

صحي

sea animals

كائنات بحرية



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

go green

الحفاظ على البيئة / صديق للبيئة

stay clean

يبقى نظيفاً

use less

استخدام أقل

safe and green

آمن وصديق للبيئة

both sides of the page

على كلا جانبي الصفحة

on both sides

على كلا الجانبين

instead of

بدلاً من

in the bin

في سلة المهملات / الصندوق

work together

نعمل معاً

with others

مع الآخرين

for everyone

من أجل الجميع

better than

أفضل من

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
walk يمشي	walked
share يشارك	shared
clean ينظف	cleaned
use يستخدم	used
remind يذكر	reminded
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed
harm يؤذي	harmed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
ride يركب	rode
send يرسل	sent
write يكتب	wrote
keep يحافظ على	kept
make يصنع	made
have يملك	had
throw يرمى	threw

Study the following

1 We can all help keep our planet clean and healthy.

يمكننا جميعاً أن نساعد في إبقاء كوكبنا نظيفاً وصحياً.

2 One way to go green is to use less paper.

إحدى طرق الحفاظ على البيئة هي استخدام ورق أقل.

3 We can go green by using less paper.

يمكننا الحفاظ على البيئة باستخدام ورق أقل.

4 We can write on both sides of the page.

يمكننا الكتابة على كلا جانبي الصفحة.

5 We can send emails instead of paper letters.

يمكننا إرسال البريد الإلكتروني بدلاً من الرسائل الورقية.

6 We can walk, ride a bike, or share rides to reduce pollution.

يمكننا المشي، ركوب الدراجة، أو مشاركة السيارات لتقليل التلوث.

7 Use tote bags instead of plastic bags when shopping.

استخدم الحقائب القماشية بدلاً من البلاستيك عند التسوق.

8 Plastic harms sea animals and nature.

البلاستيك يضر بالحيوانات البحرية والطبيعة.

9 We should always throw litter in the bin.

يجب علينا دائماً رمي القمامة في السلة.

10 Work together to keep our planet clean, safe, and green.

اعملوا معاً للحفاظ على كوكبنا نظيفاً وآمناً وصديقاً للبيئة.

Read the text:

اقرأ النص:

استمع إلى النص:



هيا نحافظ علي البيئة! Let's Go Green!

We can all help keep our planet clean and healthy.

يمكننا جميعاً أن نساعد في الحفاظ على كوكبنا نظيفاً وصحياً.

One way to go green is to use less paper.

إحدى الطرق للتوجه نحو الحياة الخضراء هي استخدام كميات أقل من الورق.

We can write on both sides of the page and send emails instead of paper letters.

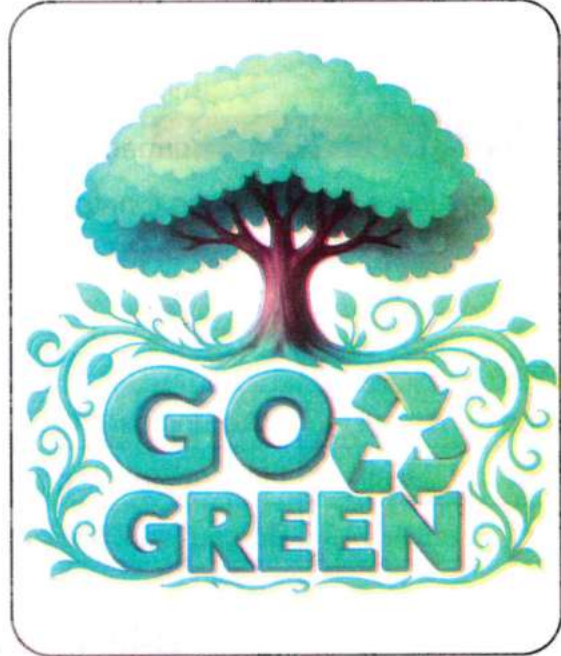
يمكننا الكتابة على جانبي الورقة وإرسال رسائل إلكترونية بدلاً من الرسائل الورقية.

To reduce pollution, we can walk, ride a bike, or share rides with others instead of using many cars.

وللتقليل من التلوث، يمكننا المشي أو ركوب الدراجة أو مشاركة الركوب مع الآخرين بدلاً من استخدام الكثير من السيارات.

It's also a great idea to use tote bags instead of plastic ones when shopping because plastic harms sea animals and nature.

ومن الرائع أيضاً استخدام حقائب قماشية بدلاً من الحقائب البلاستيكية عند التسوق لأن البلاستيك يضر الحيوانات البحرية والطبيعة.



We should always throw litter in the bin and remind others to keep our surroundings clean.

يجب علينا دائماً رمي القمامة في سلة المهملات وتذكير الآخرين بالحفاظ على نظافة البيئة من حولنا.

When we all work together, we help our planet stay clean, safe, and green for everyone to enjoy.

وعندما نعمل جميعاً معاً، نساعد كوكبنا على أن يبقى نظيفاً وآمناً وأخضر ليستمتع به الجميع.

Language in Use

وظائف لغوية

Conjunctions أدوات الربط

سنتعلم عن أدوات الربط، وهي كلمات مهمة تساعدنا على ربط أجزاء الجملة معاً وجعل الكلام سلساً وواضحاً:

1 nor ولا

- تستخدم لإضافة فكرة سلبية ثانية ويأتي بعدها الفعل المساعد مثبت حسب الجملة.

- We don't burn plastic, nor do we throw it on the ground.

- نحن لا نحرق البلاستيك، ولا نرميه على الأرض.

ملاحظة: "nor" تأتي غالباً بعد جملة منفية وتضيف فكرة سلبية أخرى.

2 so لذلك / إذن

تستخدم لتوضيح النتيجة بعد فعل شيء.

- We sort the waste, so our neighborhood stays clean.

نحن نفصل النفايات، لذلك تظل حيئنا نظيفاً.

3 because لأن / بسبب

تستخدم لتوضيح السبب أو العلة لفعل شيء.

- We recycle paper because it helps save trees.

نحن نعيد تدوير الورق لأنه يساعد على حفظ الأشجار.

4 أدوات ربط أخرى شائعة

الكلمة	معناها	مثال بسيط
and	و (للاضافة)	I like apples and oranges - أحب التفاح والبرتقال.
but	لكن (للتناقض)	I like apples, but I don't like bananas. - أحب التفاح، لكن لا أحب الموز.
or	أو (للتخيير)	Do you want tea or juice? - هل تريد شاي أم عصير؟

Checkup Exercises ✓

1 Choose the correct answer:

اختتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I wanted to play outside, it was raining.

a or

b because

c but

d too

2. We stayed at home it was too hot to go out.

a and

b for

c so

d because

3. She didn't study, she failed the test.

a so

b or

c nor

d to

4. You can have pizza pasta for lunch.

a because

b or

c of

d but

5. He doesn't like apples, does he like bananas.

a or

b nor

c so

d for

2 Read and circle the conjunction in each sentence

اقرأ وضع دائرة على أداة الربط بكل جملة :

1. I wanted to play football, but it started to rain.
2. You can have an apple or a banana.
3. I stayed home because I was feeling sick.
4. He didn't shout, nor did he get angry.
5. We finished our homework so we could watch a movie.

3 Fill in the blanks using the words in the box: املا الفراغات بالكلمات التي بالقائمة :

Because - or - so - and - nor

1. She bought apples ① oranges from the market.
2. He stayed home ② he was not feeling well.
3. You can read a book ③ watch TV before bed.
4. We were tired, ④ we went to sleep early.
5. The teacher didn't shout, ⑤ did she get angry.

4 Join the sentences using the correct conjunction (nor, so, and, but, or):

اربط الجمل باستخدام الرابط الصحيح :

1. I wanted to go to the park. It started raining.
2. She likes apples. She likes bananas.
3. You can take the bus. You can walk to school.
4. He was tired. He finished his homework.
5. Sara didn't eat breakfast. She didn't drink milk.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. We can help keep our planet clean and healthy.	☐	☐
2. One way to go green is to use less electricity.	☐	☐
3. We can write on both sides of the car.	☐	☐
4. Plastic harms sea animals and nature.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I took my umbrella it looked cloudy.
a and **b** but **c** because **d** or
- We went to the park we wanted to play football.
a so **b** because **c** but **d** nor
- She wanted to read a book, she was too tired.
a or **b** so **c** and **d** but
- You can drink milk fresh juice for breakfast.
a and **b** because **c** so **d** nor
- I finished my homework, I played video games.
a so **b** but **c** nor **d** because
- Use a instead of plastic.
a tote bag **b** car **c** page **d** bike
- He doesn't like apples, does he like grapes.
a and **b** or **c** nor **d** so
- Always throw litter in the
a bin **b** car **c** bike **d** email

9. Riding a is good for the planet.

- a** bike **b** car **c** plane **d** boat

10. Sharing a /an helps reduce pollution.

- a** ride **b** bag **c** page **d** email

11. Recycling helps keep the planet

- a** green **b** dirty **c** small **d** tall

12. She didn't read a book, did she draw a picture.

- a** because **b** nor **c** but **d** or

13. Walking instead of using cars reduces

- a** pollution **b** litter **c** trees **d** emails

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجيب عن الأسئلة:

We can protect our environment by making small changes every day. One helpful way is to save water. We can turn off the tap while washing our hands or brushing our teeth. We can also save electricity by switching off lights and fans when we leave a room. Another way to help the planet is to avoid using plastic bottles and bags because they harm animals and pollute nature. Using reusable bottles and cloth bags is better for the Earth. We should also throw rubbish in bins and remind our friends to do the same. When everyone helps, our environment stays clean and safe for all living things.

A) Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d:

1. We can save electricity by turning off the

- a** windows **b** lights **c** doors **d** books

2. Plastic bottles and bags can nature.

- a** help **b** fix **c** harm **d** clean

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Name two ways we can save resources.

4. Why is using reusable bottles better for the Earth?

5. What should we do to keep the environment clean?

Unit 2 Our World, Our Responsibility

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات ما بين الأقواس:

1. I wanted to play football, (because) it was very cold.
2. She was tired, (or) she went to bed early.
3. We stayed at home, (nor) it started to rain.
4. You can take the red pen (so) the blue pen.
5. He didn't eat the apple, (and) did he drink the juice.
6. I studied hard, (but) I got good marks.
7. We walked to school, (nor) we missed the bus.
8. She likes cats, (so) she doesn't like dogs.
9. I wore my jacket, (and) it was very cold outside.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. can you walk to school

1. we can all help keep our planet clean

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المقدرات:



water

الماء



electricity

الكهرباء



gas

الغاز

resources
run outالموارد
تنفد / تنتهيwarm
wiselyدافئ
بحكمة

Other words

كلمات أخرى

difference

فرق / اختلاف

friends

الأصدقاء

turn off

يغلق / يطفى

healthy

صحي

brushing

تنظيف الأسنان

everyone

الجميع

switching off

إطفاء / إغلاق

actions

الأفعال / التصرفات

carefully

بعناية

family

العائلة

planet

كوكب

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

use them wisely

استخدمها بحكمة

remind our family and friends

turn off the tap

أغلق الصنبور

نذكر عائلتنا وأصدقاءنا

while brushing our teeth

أثناء تنظيف أسناننا

نحدث فرقاً كبيراً

helps us cook and stay warm

تبقى نظيفة وصحية

تساعدنا على الطهي والبقاء دافئين

use resources carefully

switch off lights and fans

أطفئ الأنوار والمراوح

نستخدم الموارد بحذر

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
remind	يُذَكِّر
clean	يُنْظِف
stay	يَبْقَى
switch	يُبَدِّل / يُطْفِئ
use	يُسْتَخْدِم
waste	يَهْدِر

Past ماضٍ	
reminded	
cleaned	
stayed	
switched	
used	
wasted	

Present مضارع	
give	يُعْطِي
run out	يَنْفَد
leave	يُغَادِر
make	يَصْنَع / يُحَدِّث

Past ماضٍ	
gave	
ran out	
left	
made	

Study the following

- Our Earth gives us many important resources like water, electricity, and gas.
تمنحنا أرضنا الكثير من الموارد المهمة مثل الماء والكهرباء والغاز.
- We need to use them wisely so they don't run out.
نحتاج إلى استخدامها بحكمة حتى لا تنفذ.
- We can save water by turning off the tap while brushing our teeth.
يمكننا توفير الماء بإغلاق الصنبور أثناء تنظيف أسناننا.
- We can save electricity by switching off lights and fans when we leave the room.
يمكننا توفير الكهرباء بإطفاء الأضواء والمراوح عندما نغادر الغرفة.
- Gas helps us cook and stay warm, so we should never waste it.
يساعدنا الغاز على الطهي والبقاء دافئين، لذلك يجب ألا نضيعه.
- We can also remind our family and friends to use these resources carefully.
يمكننا أيضًا تذكير عائلتنا وأصدقائنا باستخدام هذه الموارد بعناية.
- When we save what Earth gives us, we help the planet stay clean and healthy for everyone.
عندما نحافظ على ما تقدمه لنا الأرض، فإننا نساعد الكوكب على البقاء نظيفًا وصحيًا للجميع.
- Small actions every day can make a big difference!
الأفعال الصغيرة كل يوم يمكن أن تحدث فرقًا كبيرًا!



Small Actions Make a Big Difference!

الأفعال الصغيرة تُحدث فرقًا كبيرًا!

Our Earth gives us many important resources like water, electricity, and gas.

تمنحنا أرضنا العديد من الموارد المهمة مثل الماء والكهرباء والغاز.

We need to use them wisely so they don't run out.

نحن بحاجة إلى استخدامها بحكمة حتى لا تنفذ.

We can save water by turning off the tap while brushing our teeth.

يمكننا توفير الماء عن طريق إغلاق الصنبور أثناء تنظيف أسناننا.

We can save electricity by switching off lights and fans when we leave the room.

ويمكننا توفير الكهرباء بإطفاء الأنوار والمراوح عندما نغادر الغرفة.

Gas helps us cook and stay warm, so we should never waste it.

يساعدنا الغاز في الطهي والبقاء دافئين، لذلك يجب ألا نهدره أبدًا.

We can also remind our family and friends to use these resources carefully.

يمكننا أيضًا تذكير عائلتنا وأصدقائنا باستخدام هذه الموارد بعناية.

When we save what Earth gives us, we help the planet stay clean and healthy for everyone.

عندما نحافظ على ما تمنحنا إياه الأرض، فإننا تساعد الكوكب على البقاء نظيفًا وصحيًا للجميع.

Small actions every day can make a big difference!

الأفعال الصغيرة كل يوم يمكن أن تُحدث فرقًا كبيرًا!



1 Read again and answer:

اعد القراءة ثم اجب:

A. Circle the correct answer:

1. How can we save water?

- a leave the tap running while brushing teeth
- b turn off the tap while brushing teeth
- c waste it in the garden
- d pour it on the floor



2. Why should we save electricity?

- a to help the planet stay clean and healthy
- b because electricity is unlimited
- c to make the lights brighter
- d to heat water faster



3. What should we do to remind others about saving resources?

- a waste gas and water
- b ignore what others do
- c only save resources at school
- d tell our family and friends to use resources carefully

B. Answer the following questions

4. What might happen if people keep wasting water and electricity?

5. How can you and your classmates help save resources at school?



Pronunciation

(R)-controlled words

الكلمات التي يتحكم فيها حرف (r)

- عندما يأتي حرف **r** بعد أحد حروف العلة (a, e, i, o, u) فإنه يغيّر صوت هذا الحرف.
- لا نسمع صوت حرف العلة وحده، بل نسمع صوتاً جديداً ناتجاً عن دمج الحرفين معاً.
- لهذا نسميها **R-controlled vowels** (حروف العلة التي يتحكم فيها **R**).
- أنواع الأصوات مع أمثلة:

(ar) words



st**ar** نجمة



car سيارة

(ir) words



bird طائر



girl فتاة



birth**day**

عيد ميلاد

(er) words

استمع إلى المفردات:



teach**er**

معلم / معلمة



tig**er**

نمر



sist**er**

أخت



runn**er**

عداء

term

فصل / مدة دراسية

(ur) words



nurs**e**

ممرضة



pur**ple**

بنفسجي



furnit**ure**

أثاث



f**ur**

فرو

(or) words



world

عالم



corn

ذرة



storm

عاصفة

- ملاحظة: في بعض الكلمات يُنطق **or** مثل **er** مثل كلمة **work** و **word**.
- نصيحة: عندما ترى حرف **r** بعد حرف علة، انطق الحرفين معاً كأنهما صوت واحد مثل: **car/ bird / turn**.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Our Earth gives us many important resources.	☐	☐
2. We can save water by turning off the light.	☐	☐
3. We can save electricity by switching off the fans.	☐	☐
4. Gas helps us cook and stay warm.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We get water, gas, and electricity from natural
 a teachers b resources c animals d games
- We drink clean every day.
 a sand b air c food d water
- We use to turn on the lights.
 a plants b paper c electricity d books
- helps us cook our food.
 a Ice b Milk c Juice d Gas
- The Earth is our home
 a tree b planet c city d table
- We can help the Earth by doing good every day.
 a bikes b games c actions d colors
- Small actions can make a big
 a food b car c school d difference
- Gas helps us cook and stay in winter.
 a clean b sleepy c warm d happy

9. We must use water and electricity

- a** slowly **b** wisely **c** loudly **d** quickly

10. My teaches us English every day.

- a** nurse **b** teacher **c** star **d** farmer

11. The helps sick people get better.

- a** nurse **b** shirt **c** world **d** teacher

12. The cat has soft on its body.

- a** fur **b** star **c** gas **d** corn

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

difference - planet - resources - healthy - cold

Gas helps us cook and stay warm, so we should never waste it. We should use resources wisely. We can also remind our family and friends to use these

1 carefully. When we save what Earth gives us, we help the
2 stay clean and 3 for everyone. Small actions every day
can make a big 4

4 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Animals are an important part of our world. They give us food, help nature stay balanced, and make our planet beautiful. But many animals are in danger because people cut down trees and pollute the air and water. We must take care of them. We can protect animals by keeping forests clean and safe. We should never throw plastic on the ground because it can hurt birds and sea animals. We can also save animals by planting more trees, because trees are homes for many creatures. When we learn about animals and teach others how to protect them, we make the world a safer place for all living things. Even small steps can help save many animals.

A) Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d:

1. We should not throw on the ground.

- a** trees **b** plastic **c** books **d** pillows

2. Trees are for many animals.

- a** toys **b** homes **c** games **d** colors

Unit 2 Our World, Our Responsibility

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why are many animals in danger?

4. How can planting more trees help animals?

5. What happens when we teach others about protecting animals?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم:

1. how can we save water

2. she won the race

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

سجّاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Important resources

water - gas - wisely

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



taking care	الاعتناء بـ	soil	تربة زراعية
kind	عطوف	strong	قوي
food	الطعام	together	سويا
safe	أمن	animals	الحيوانات
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	plants	النباتات

Other words كلمات أخرى

always	دائمًا	introduction	المقدمة
place	مكان	conclusion	الخاتمة
clean	نظيف	details	التفاصيل
beautiful	جميل	title	عنوان
friend	صديق	closing	الإنهاء

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

take care of	يعتني بـ	need care	يحتاج لرعاية
be kind to	يكون لطيف مع	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

need	يحتاج
stay	يبقى
protect	يحمي

Past ماضٍ

needed
stayed
protected

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

take care	يعتني بـ
give	يعطي
hurt	يؤذي
scare	يخيف
grow	يكبر / ينمو

Past ماضٍ

took care
gave
hurt
scared
grew

Study the following

1 We should always be kind to animal.

يجب علينا ان نكون لطفاء مع الحيوانات.

2 We must never hurt them or scare them.

يجب علينا ألا نخيف الحيوانات او نوذيهم.

3 Plants also need care. They need sunlight, water, and clean soil.

تحتاج النباتات ايضا إلى العناية فهي تحتاج إلى اشعة الشمس والمياه والتربة الصالحة للزراعة.

4 We can plant trees and flowers to make our world more beautiful..

نستطيع زراعة الأشجار والزهور لنجعل عالمنا أكثر جمالا.

5 If we care for animals and plants, our planet will stay healthy.

لو قمنا بالاعتناء بالنباتات والحيوانات كوكبنا سيظل في حالة صحية جيدة.

6 Let's protect them together.

هيا نحميهم سويا.

دليل كتابة الإيميل



1 Title

العنوان

هو اسم الرسالة ويخبر القارئ عن موضوع الإيميل.

- Taking Care of Animals and Plants

العنوان يوضح أن الرسالة عن كيفية العناية بالحيوانات والنباتات.

2 Greeting

التحية

هي جملة نحني بها الشخص في بداية الإيميل.

- Hi Mai,

3 Introduction

المقدمة

جملة قصيرة تشرح لماذا نكتب هذا الإيميل.

- I hope you are doing great!

- I want to tell you about how we can take care of animals and plants.

- هنا الرسالة تخبر صديقتها بموضوع الرسالة.

4 Body

التفاصيل / الجسم

الجزء الذي يحتوي على المعلومات الأساسية.

الجميل يجب أن تكون واضحة وسهلة.

- We should always be kind to animals...

- Plants also need care...

- If we care for animals and plants...

- هذا الجزء يشرح كيف نهتم بالحيوانات والنباتات.

5 Conclusion الخاتمة

- Let's protect them together!

● جملة لطيفة لإنهاء الإيميل.

- خاتمة تشجع على حماية الحيوانات والنباتات.

6 Closing الانتهاء

- Your friend,

- Mona

تكتب فيه عبارة ودّية + اسم المرسل.

Read and learn:

اقرأ وتعلم:

Title to the email

عنوان الإيميل

Greet your friend

تحية صديقك

Introduction: What the email is about

المقدمة: عن ماذا الإيميل

Body: details

الموضوع: التفاصيل

Conclusion: friendly closing

الخاتمة: نهاية ودودة

Closing: sign your name

النهاية: اسمك

New Message

To: Mai@hotmail.com Cc Bcc

From: mona@gmail.com

Subject: Taking Care of Animals and Plants

Hi Mai,

I hope you are doing great!

I want to tell you about how we can take care of animals and plants. We should always be kind to animals and give them food, water, and a safe place to live. We must never hurt them or scare them.

Plants also need care. They need sunlight, water, and clean soil to grow strong. We can plant trees and flowers to make our world more beautiful. If we care for animals and plants, our planet will stay healthy.

Let's protect them together!

Your friend,

Mona

اهلا مي!

أتمنى أن تكون بخير! أريد أن أخبرك كيف يمكننا العناية بالحيوانات والنباتات. يجب أن نكون دائماً لطفاء مع الحيوانات، وأن نعطيهما الطعام والماء ومكاناً آمناً للعيش. ولا يجب أن نؤذيها أو نخيفها كما أن النباتات تحتاج إلى عناية. فهي تحتاج إلى ضوء الشمس والماء والتربة النظيفة لتنمو بشكل قوي. ويمكننا زراعة الأشجار والزهور لجعل عالمنا أكثر جمالاً. وإذا اعتنينا بالحيوانات والنباتات، سيبقى كوكبنا صحيحاً. فلنحمها معاً!

صديقتك: مني

Send

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Animals and plants are living things.	☐	☐
2. We shouldn't take care of animals and plants.	☐	☐
3. We need to grow trees and flowers.	☐	☐
4. Our planet will stay healthy without plants and animals.	☐	☐

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

throw - instead - stop - electricity - care

People should work together to protect our planet. They should ①..... pollution by recycling old things. Don't use more water or ②..... It's important to take ③..... of plants and animals. We shouldn't ④..... litter to keep our surrounding clean.

3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Plants and animals are very important for our environment. Plants give us oxygen, food, and shade. Animals help keep nature balanced. To protect them, we must not cut trees or destroy their homes. We should give animals clean water and keep the places where they live safe. When we take care of plants and animals, we help our Earth stay healthy and clean.

A) Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d:

1. Plants give us

a toys

b oxygen

c cars

d books

2. We should keep animals' homes

a dirty

b broken

c safe

d tall

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why are plants important for the environment?

4. What can you do to protect animals in your community?

5. How does protecting plants and animals help the Earth?

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. we must save our resources

2. should we be kind to animals

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Protecting our planet

care - plants - animals

Review



on Unit 2



tote bag

حقيبة قماشية



go green

الحفاظ على البيئة /
صديق للبيئة



pollution

تلوث



litter

نفايات / قمامة



water

الماء



electricity

الكهرباء



gas

الغاز

surroundings

البيئة المحيطة

remind

يُذكر

planet

كوكب

water

الماء

clean

نظيف

electricity

الكهرباء

reduce

يقلل

bottle

زجاجة

reuse

يعيد الاستخدام

paper

ورق

recycle

يعيد التدوير

plastic

بلاستيك

3Rs

القواعد الثلاث

apply

يطبق

resources

الموارد

warm

دافئ

run out

تنفذ / تنتهي

wisely

بحكمة

taking care

الاعتناء بـ

soil

تربة زراعية

kind

عطوف

strong

قوي

food

الطعام

together

سويا

safe

آمن

animals

الحيوانات

sunlight

ضوء الشمس

plants

النباتات

Adjectives

الصفات

cold	بارد	gentle	هادئ/ لطيف
beautiful	جميل	peaceful	هادئ/ سلمي
tall	طويل	happy	سعيد
green	أخضر	relaxed	مسترخي
wide	واسع	delicious	لذيذ
big	كبير	wonderful	رائع

Language in Use

وظائف لغوية

Conjunctions أدوات الربط

سنتعلم عن أدوات الربط، وهي كلمات مهمة تساعدنا على ربط أجزاء الجملة معًا وجعل الكلام سلسًا وواضحًا:

1 nor ولا

- تستخدم لإضافة فكرة سلبية ثانية.

- We don't burn plastic, nor do we throw it on the ground.

- نحن لا نحرق البلاستيك، ولا نرميه على الأرض.

● ملاحظة: "nor" تأتي غالبًا بعد جملة سلبية وتضيف فكرة سلبية أخرى.

2 so لذلك / إذن

تستخدم لتوضيح النتيجة بعد فعل شيء.

- We sort the waste, so our neighborhood stays clean.

نحن نفصل النفايات، لذلك تظل حيّنا نظيفًا.

3 because لأن / بسبب

تستخدم لتوضيح السبب أو العلة لفعل شيء.

- We recycle paper because it helps save trees.

نحن نعيد تدوير الورق لأنه يساعد على حفظ الأشجار.

4 أدوات ربط أخرى شائعة

الكلمة	معناها	مثال بسيط
and	و	I like apples and oranges - أحب التفاح والبرتقال.
but	لكن (للتناقض)	I like apples, but I don't like bananas. - أحب التفاح، لكن لا أحب الموز.
or	أو	Do you want tea or juice? - هل تريد شاي أم عصير؟



Pronunciation

(R)-controlled words

الكلمات التي يتحكم فيها حرف (r)

- عندما يأتي حرف **r** بعد أحد حروف العلة (a, e, i, o, u) فإنه يغيّر صوت هذا الحرف.
- لا نسمع صوت حرف العلة وحده، بل نسمع صوتًا جديدًا ناتجًا عن دمج الحرفين معًا.
- لهذا نسميها **R-controlled vowels** (حروف العلة التي يتحكم فيها **R**).
- أنواع الأصوات مع أمثلة:

(ar) words



star نجمة



car سيارة

(ir) words



bird طائر



girl فتاة



birthday عيد ميلاد

عيد ميلاد

(er) words



teacher

معلم / معلمة



tiger

نمر



sister

أخت



runner عداء

term

فصل / مدة دراسية

(ur) words



nurse

ممرضة



purple

بنفسجي



furniture

أثاث



fur

فرو

(or) words



world

عالم



corn

ذرة



storm

عاصفة



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Caring for our planet

We should take care of our planet. We can use the 3Rs. They mean reuse, reduce and recycle. So we shouldn't waste water or electricity and we should recycle old things.

2

Lesson 3

Important resources

Our Earth gives us many important resources like water, electricity, and gas. We need to use them wisely so they don't run out. We can save water by turning off the tap while brushing our teeth. We can save electricity by switching off lights and fans.

3

Lessons 4&5

Protecting our planet

We should protect our planet by keeping it clean. We can plant trees, save water, and recycle waste. When we care for Earth, we help all people, animals, and plants live safely.

4

Al-Azhar test

Saving resources

Our Earth gives us many important resources like water, electricity, and gas. We need to use them wisely so they don't run out. We can save electricity by switching off lights and fans when we leave the room. We should help the planet stay clean and healthy for everyone.

5

Test - Unit 2

Protecting the environment

We should protect our environment. We should protect animals and plants. Animals need special care. Plants need good soil to grow. Protecting the environment is very important.

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Mahmoud is in grade (four - three - five).
- Today we will learn how to keep our clean with the 3Rs .
(street - park - planet)
- The 3Rs are, Reuse, and Recycle. (Remove - Refuse - Reduce)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة :

water - animals - fine - How

- Ahmed : ① are you ?
Teacher : I'm ② , thank you .
Ahmed : How can we take care of ③ ?
Teacher : We should be kind to animals and give them food and ④

C- Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

- To protect our, we must take care of nature .
a planet b books c bikes d pens
- She doesn't like oranges, does she like apples.
a or b nor c so d because
- We stayed at home it was too hot.
a and b because c so d nor
- It's important to plastic bottles instead of throwing them away.
a eat b replay c reuse d plant

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes: اقرأ وصحح الكلمة التي تحتها خط:

1. She likes apples because she likes bananas.
2. Sara didn't eat breakfast so she didn't drink milk.
3. We were tired or we went to sleep early.
4. She bought apples nor oranges from the market.

D- Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

We must use Earth's resources like water, electricity, and gas wisely to prevent waste. Simple actions, like turning off taps and lights, can save these resources. Encouraging others to do the same helps keep the planet clean and healthy. Every small action is useful!

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

1. We can save electricity.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐

2. Every small action is bad.

B) Choose the correct answer:

3. We must use Earth's resources like water, electricity, and
(oil – air – gas)
4. Encouraging others to do the same helps keep the planet clean and
(safe – healthy – unhealthy)
5. Simple actions, like turning off and lights, can save these resources .
(toys – pans – fans)

E- Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

Saving resources

water - elecricity - gas - turn off

مجاوب عنه اخر الوحدة

Test on Unit 2

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. We can help the planet by using less paper.	☐	☐
2. We should use many cars to reduce pollution.	☐	☐
3. Using tote bags is better than plastic bags.	☐	☐
4. Plastic is good for sea animals.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We should always throw litter in the
 a bin b car c room d nature
- harms sea animals and nature.
 a Plastic b Food c Vitamins d Fruit
- The teacher told us to..... the new ideas in our project.
 a play b apply c eat d shop
- She was ill she didn't go to school.
 a so b or c nor d because
- We recycle paper it helps save trees.
 a or b nor c because d but
- You can have an apple a banana.
 a or b because c so d nor

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sunlight – water – trees – hurt – beach

I want to tell you about how we can take care of animals and plants.
 We should always give animals food, ①, and a safe place to live.
 We must never ② them or scare them. Plants need clean soil and
 ③ to grow well. We can also plant ④ and flowers to
 make our world more beautiful.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

We can all help protect our environment by saving energy and reducing waste. One way is to turn off lights when we leave a room. We should also save water by closing the tap while brushing our teeth. To keep nature clean, we can recycle plastic, paper, and glass instead of throwing them away. Planting trees is another great way to help the Earth because trees give us clean air. When we take care of our environment, we make our world a better and healthier place for all people, animals, and plants.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We can save energy by turning off the
 a TV b lights c fridge d fans
- Trees help the Earth by giving us
 a food b clean air c water d clothes

B. Answer the following questions:

- What should we do with plastic, paper, and glass?
- Why is planting trees good for the Earth?
- What happens when we take care of our environment?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- She didn't study (or) she failed the test.
- You can have pizza (but) pasta for lunch.
- He didn't shout, (so) did he get angry.
- I drink water (or) I am thirsty.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- how can we save water
- gas is important for cooking and staying warm

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Protecting the environment

save - water - gas

.....

.....

.....

.....



What's in the Package?

ما الذي يوجد داخل الطرد؟

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- Use new vocabulary to describe different types of packaging
يستطيع الطالب استخدام مفردات جديدة لوصف أنواع مختلفة من التغليف.
- Talk about countable and uncountable nouns in everyday situations
يستطيع الطالب التحدث عن الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة في المواقف اليومية.
- Pronounce words with silent consonant letters (b/w) correctly
يستطيع الطالب نطق الكلمات التي تحتوي على حروف ساكنة (b/w) بشكل صحيح.

Listening:

- Use countable and uncountable nouns correctly in sentences
يستطيع الطالب استخدام الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة بشكل صحيح في الجمل.
- Recognize and read words with silent consonant letters (b/w)
يستطيع الطالب التعرف على الكلمات التي تحتوي على حروف ساكنة (b/w) وقراءتها.

Reading:

- Read dialogs related to packaging and shopping
يستطيع الطالب قراءة الحوارات المتعلقة بالتغليف والتسوق.
- Identify countable and uncountable nouns in context
يستطيع الطالب تمييز الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة في السياق.

Writing:

- Write a narrative paragraph using countable and uncountable nouns
يستطيع الطالب كتابة فقرة سردية باستخدام الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة.
- Organize ideas clearly to describe objects, quantities, and packaging
يستطيع الطالب تنظيم أفكاره بشكل واضح لوصف الأشياء والكميات والتغليف.
- Create a poster about how to help others
يستطيع الطالب تصميم ملصق عن كيفية مساعدة الآخرين.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



Neighborhood

حي سكني



food packages

عبوات الطعام



vegetables

خضراوات



cucumbers

خيار



peaches

خوخ



bananas

موز



climb the stairs

يصعد الدَّرَج / السلالم



delivery

التسليم / التوصيل



elderly

مسن / عجوز



Other words

كلمات أخرى

busy

مزدحم

smiling

مبتسمون

sellers

بائعون

needs

احتياجات

fruits

فواكه

promise

وعد

tomatoes

طماطم

families

عائلات

bread

خبز

children

أطفال

market

السوق

canned food

طعام معلب

carefully

بعناية

Unit 3 What's in the Package?

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

two weeks ago	منذ أسبوعين	after shopping	بعد التسوق
early in the morning	في الصباح الباكر	people in need	المحتاجون
went to the market	ذهبوا إلى السوق	learn about their needs	يتعرفون على احتياجاتهم
knocked on doors	طرقوا الأبواب		
lives next door	يسكن بالجوار		

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	
prepare	يُحضّر
arrive	يصل
knock	يطرق
enjoy	يستمتع
promise	يعد
talk	يتحدث
help	يساعد

Past ماضٍ

prepared
arrived
knocked
enjoyed
promised
talked
helped

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
go	يذهب
buy	يشترى
choose	يختار
sit	يجلس
give	يعطي

Past ماضٍ

went
bought
chose
sat
gave

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 knock + on + the door (نطرق على الباب)

⊙ الفعل **knock** يأتي معه حرف الجر **on** عندما نتحدث عن الأبواب.

- They **knocked** on doors.

طرقوا الأبواب.

2 give + someone + something

⊙ بعد **give** نذكر الشخص ثم الشيء.

- Fatma **gave** children fruits.

أعطت فاطمة الأطفال فواكه.

3 arrive + at/in (نصل إلى مكان)

⊙ نستخدم **arrive** مع **at** أو **in**، لكن لا نستخدم معها **to**.

- They **arrived at** the neighborhood.

وصلوا إلى الحي.

Study the following

- 1 Kareem and Fatma prepared food packages for the poor people. - كريم وفاطمة حضروا طروداً غذائية للفقراء.
- 2 Early in the morning, they went to the market. - ذهبوا إلى السوق في الصباح الباكر.
- 3 The market was busy with many sellers. - كان السوق مزدحماً بالكثير من البائعين.
- 4 Kareem chose a kilo of bananas. - اختار كريم كيلو من الموز.
- 5 They bought tomatoes, cucumbers, and bread. - اشتروا طماطم وخيار وخبز.
- 6 They packed the food carefully into bags. - قاموا بتعبئة الطعام بعناية داخل الأكياس.
- 7 They knocked on doors to give the families food. - طرّقوا الأبواب لإعطاء الأسر الطعام.
- 8 Kareem helped an elderly lady climb the stairs. - ساعد كريم سيدة مسنة على صعود السلالم.
- 9 Fatma gave fruits to some children who were smiling. - أعطت فاطمة فواكه لبعض أطفال كانوا مبتسمين.
- 10 They talked to the families to learn about their needs. - تحدثوا مع العائلات لمعرفة احتياجاتهم.
- 11 Kareem and Fatma enjoyed the day. - استمتع كريم وفاطمة بيومهما.

Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:



A Day of Helping Others يوم مساعدة الآخرين

Two weeks ago, Kareem and Fatma prepared food packages for the poor people in their neighborhood. Early in the morning, they went to the market with their mother to buy everything they needed. The market was busy, full of sellers calling out and showing their vegetables and fruits. Kareem chose a kilo of bananas, while Fatma chose a kilo of peaches. They also bought tomatoes, cucumbers, and bread. After shopping, they packed the food carefully into bags.

When they arrived at the neighborhood, they knocked on doors and gave the families the food.

Kareem helped an elderly lady climb the stairs to her home, and Fatma gave fruits to some children who were smiling. After delivering everything, they sat and talked with the families to learn about their needs. It was hard work, but Kareem and Fatma enjoyed the day and promised to do it again.



منذ أسبوعين، جهّز كريم وفاطمة طروداً غذائية للفقراء في حيّهم. في الصباح الباكر، ذهبوا مع والدتهم إلى السوق لشراء كل ما يحتاجونه. كان السوق مزدحماً، مليئاً بالباعة الذين ينادون ويعرضون خضرواتهم وفواكههم. اختار كريم كيلو من الموز، بينما اختارت فاطمة كيلو من الخوخ. كما اشتروا الطماطم والخيار والخبز. بعد التسوق، قاموا بتعبئة الطعام بعناية داخل أكياس. وعندما وصلوا إلى الحي، طرّقوا الأبواب وأعطوا العائلات الطعام. ساعد كريم سيدة مسنة على صعود الدرج إلى منزلها، وقدمت فاطمة الفاكهة لبعض الأطفال الذين كانوا يبتسمون. وبعد تسليم كل شيء، جلسوا وتحدثوا مع العائلات لمعرفة احتياجاتهم. كان العمل شاقاً، لكن كريم وفاطمة استمتعا باليوم ووعدا بأن يفعلوا ذلك مرة أخرى.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Kareem and Fatma prepared books for the poor people.	☐	☐
2. They went to the market early in the morning.	☐	☐
3. Kareem chose a kilo of bananas.	☐	☐
4. Fatma chose a kilo of cucumbers.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I ordered food from the restaurant and I waited for the
 a elderly b delivery c stairs d families
- Food packages are
 a boxes of food b books c metals d boxes of pens
- To the stairs means to go up the stairs.
 a eat b climb c sit d play
- A neighborhood is a place where people together.
 a live b fly things c buy bananas d climb trees
- They enjoyed the day and to do it again.
 a climbed b promised c gave d took
- I bought vegetables and fruits from the
 a hospital b school c market d clothes shop

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

prepare - climb - elderly - arrive - promise

My friend and I like helping others. When we ① in our neighborhood, we help the poor and ② people. We ③ food packages and knocked on doors and give the families the food. We enjoyed our day and ④ to do it again.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last Friday, Rania and Omar decided to clean the small park near their home. Early in the morning, they took brooms, bags, and gloves with them. The park was quiet, and only a few people were there. Rania started by picking up plastic bottles, while Omar swept the ground near the benches. They also watered the flowers to help them grow. After finishing their work, an old man sitting on a bench thanked them for their help. Rania gave him a bottle of water, and Omar carried his bag for him. The children felt happy because they made the park clean and beautiful. They promised to come back every week to help keep the park tidy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rania and Omar cleaned the

- a** street **b** school **c** park **d** market

2. Rania gave the old man

- a** a bottle of water **b** a flower **c** a broom **d** a book

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Rania and Omar take with them to the park?

4. Who thanked Rania and Omar for their help?

5. Why did the children feel happy at the end?

Unit 3 What's in the Package?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم الآتية:

1. did kareem help his friends?

2. they packed food carefully

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) اربع جمل عن:

مَجَاب عَنْهُ آخِرُ الْوَحْدَةِ

Helping others

food packages - buy - bags

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



milk

حليب



chocolate

شوكولاتة



dessert

تحلية / حلوى



pack

عبوة

Partitives

أدوات التجزئة

a carton of	علبة من	a carton of milk	علبة لبن
a bar of	قطعة من	a bar of chocolate	قطعة شيكولاتة
a pack of	عبوة من	a big pack of biscuits	علبة بسكويت كبيرة
a bottle of	زجاجة من	a bottle of orange juice	زجاجة عصير برتقال
a slice of	شريحة من	a slice of bread	شريحة خبز
a piece of	قطعة من	a piece of cheese	قطعة من الجبن
a kilo of	كيلو من	a kilo of apples	كيلو من التفاح

Other words

كلمات أخرى

first	أولاً	picnic	نزهة خلوية
kind	نوع	tea	شاي
everyone	الجميع	sandwich	شطيرة / سندويش
weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	butter	زبدة
biscuits	بسكويت	apples	تفاح
cousins	أبناء العم / الخال	dark chocolate	شيكولاتة داكنة
orange juice	عصير برتقال	white chocolate	شيكولاتة بيضاء
cereal	طعام من الحبوب	milk chocolate	شيكولاتة بالحليب

Unit 3 What's in the Package?

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

prepare for	يستعد لـ	for dessert	للتحلية
last weekend	نهاية الأسبوع الماضية	for everyone	للجميع
a lot of work	الكثير من العمل	that sounds fun	يبدو ممتعاً
together	معاً		

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

prepare	يُحضّر / يستعد
pack	يعبئ / يجهز
remind	يذكر
add	يضيف
call out	ينادي

Past ماض

prepared
packed
reminded
added
called out

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

buy	يشترى
choose	يختار
take	يأخذ
be	يكون
get	يحصل على

Past ماض

bought
chose
took
was / were
got

Study the following

1 I want to tell you how I prepared for the picnic with my mother last weekend.

- أريد أن أخبرك كيف استعددتُ للنزهة مع أمي في عطلة الأسبوع الماضية.

2 First, we bought a carton of milk for tea.

- أولاً، اشترينا علبة حليب من أجل الشاي.

3 Then my mother chose a bar of chocolate for dessert.

- ثم اختارت أمي قطعة شوكولاتة للحلوى.

4 We also packed a big pack of biscuits.

- قمنا أيضاً بوضع عبوة كبيرة من البسكويت.

5 We took a bottle of orange juice.

- أخذنا زجاجة من عصير البرتقال.

6 We packed a slice of bread and a piece of cheese for each sandwich.

- وضعنا شريحة خبز وقطعة جبن لكل شطيرة.

7 My mother reminded me to bring some butter.

- ذكرتني أمي أن أحضر بعض الزبدة.

8 We packed a kilo of apples for everyone.

- وضعنا كيلو من التفاح للجميع.

9 It was a lot of work, but we were excited and happy to prepare it together.

- كان هناك الكثير من العمل، لكننا كنا متحمسين وسعداء لأننا جهزناه معاً.

Read the dialog:

استمع واقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:



الاستعداد للنزهة Preparing for the Picnic

Noura : Laila, I want to tell you how I prepared for the picnic with my mother last weekend.

نورا : ليلي، أريد أن أخبرك كيف استعددت للنزهة مع والدتي في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضية.

Laila : Oh, that sounds fun! What did you do first?

ليلى : أوه، يبدو ذلك ممتعاً! ماذا فعلت أولاً؟

Noura : First, we bought a carton of milk for tea. Then my mother chose a bar of chocolate for dessert.

نورا : أولاً، اشترينا علبة حليب من أجل الشاي. ثم اختارت أمي قالب

شوكولاتة للحلوى.



Laila : Which kind did you get?

ليلى : أي نوع أخذتم؟

Noura : The milk chocolate one. We also packed a big pack of biscuits because my cousins love them.

نورا : الشوكولاتة بالحليب. كما وضعنا في الحقيبة عبوة كبيرة من البسكويت لأن أبناء عمي يحبونه.

Laila : Good idea! What else did you add?

ليلى : فكرة جيدة! ماذا أضفتم أيضاً؟

Noura : We took a bottle of orange juice, a slice of bread, and a piece of cheese for each sandwich. My mother also reminded me to bring some butter.



نورا : أخذنا زجاجة عصير برتقال، وشرحة خبز، وقطعة جبن لكل شطيرة. وذكرتني أمي أيضاً أن أحضر بعض الزبدة.

Laila : Did you add fruit too?

ليلى : وهل أضفتم الفاكهة أيضاً؟

Noura : Yes! We packed a kilo of apples for everyone. It was a lot of work, but we were excited and happy to prepare it together.

نورة : نعم! وضعنا كيلو من التفاح للجميع. لقد كان عملاً كثيراً، لكننا كنا متحمسين وسعداء لأعداد ذلك معاً.

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

Countable and Uncountable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

1 Countable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة

Countable nouns are things we can count one by one. We can use **a**, **an**, or **numbers** with them.

⊙ الأسماء المعدودة هي أشياء يمكننا عدّها. يمكننا استخدام **a** و **an** أو الأعداد معها.

a pen	an apple	two chairs	five books
قلم	تفاحة	كرسيان	خمسة كتب

2 Uncountable Nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

Uncountable nouns are things we cannot count because they do not have separate pieces. We do not use **a**, **an**, or **numbers** with them.

⊙ الأسماء غير المعدودة هي أشياء لا يمكن عدّها لأنها لا تتكون من قطع منفصلة. لا نستخدم معها **a** أو **an** أو الأعداد.

water	rice	milk	sugar	cheese
ماء	أرز	حليب	سكر	جبين

3 Partitive Expressions with Uncountable Nouns تعبيرات التجزئة مع الأسماء غير المعدودة

To talk about a specific amount of an uncountable noun, we use a partitive expression. It helps us show the amount we want.

⊙ عندما نريد التحدث عن كمية محددة من اسم غير معدود، نستخدم تعبير تجزئة. وهو يساعدنا على توضيح المقدار الذي نحتاجه.

- I bought **a carton** of milk. اشتريت علبة حليب.

4 some بعض

⊙ نستخدم **some** مع الأسماء المعدودة أو غير المعدودة في حالة الأثبات،

- جملة مثبتة:

- I have **some** apples. لدي بعض التفاح.

5 any أي

⊙ نستخدم **any** عندما نسأل سؤالاً (Question) أو ننفي جملة (Negative):

- Do you have **any** milk? هل لديك أي حليب؟

- I don't have **any** biscuits. ليس لدي أي بسكويت.

6 How many? / How much?

⊙ للسؤال عن الأشياء التي تعد نستخدم **How many?** كم للعدد ...؟

⊙ للسؤال عن الأشياء التي لا تعد نستخدم **How much?** كم للكمية ...؟

- **How many** apples do you need?

- I need **three** apples

لاحظ:

١- بعد **How many...?** نضع اسم جمع.

- **How much** rice do you want?

- I want **a kilo of** rice.

٢- لاحظ استخدام ألفاظ التجزئة عند الإجابة عن السؤال بـ **"How much...?"**.

Check up exercises ✓

1 Circle the correct answer: SB

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I'm thirsty. Can I have water, please?
☐ a glass of ☐ an ☐ a ☐ many
- There are ten on the table. We need to put some away.
☐ chairs ☐ milk ☐ cheese ☐ water
- I would like cheese on my sandwich.
☐ a piece of ☐ an ☐ a ☐ many
- How many are in your bag?
☐ books ☐ rice ☐ juice ☐ milk
- We have slice bread for breakfast.
☐ some ☐ any ☐ a ☐ an

2 Fill in the blanks using the words in the box: SB

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

a pack of - an - a kilo of - a bottle of - a

- My father brought home a water for the trip.
- He saw dog in the park.
- The grocer sold me a tomatoes for the salad.
- The teacher gave us a pencil colors for drawing.
- I have apple in my bag.

3 Read and correct the sentences: SB

اقرأ وصحح الجمل:

- I have (**an**) banana in my lunchbox.
- She bought (**a**) orange from the market.
- We need a (**pieces of**) bread for breakfast.
- He has (**an**) pencil in his bag.
- There are (**a**) apples on the table.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Last week, I prepared for a picnic with my family.	☐	☐
2. We bought meat, cheese, and juice.	☐	☐
3. My mother brought chocolate for dessert.	☐	☐
4. We enjoyed our time.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We bought a of milk.
 a slice b carton c bag d bar
- I ate a of cheese.
 a piece b glass c bag d bottle
- She packed a big of biscuits.
 a pack b slice c carton d bottle
- We drank a of orange juice.
 a piece b slice c bottle d bar
- We need a of bread for the sandwich.
 a slice b bar c kilo d bottle
- Dark chocolate and chocolate are my favorites.
 a bread b white c cheese d orange
- We worked to prepare the picnic.
 a dessert b butter c weekend d together

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

slice - milk - apples - juice - bar

Today, I went to the supermarket to buy some food. I bought a carton of ① and a bottle of orange ② for breakfast. For lunch, I bought a ③ of bread and a piece of cheese. Finally, I bought a kilo of ④ to make a fruit salad. It was a nice shopping day!

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I bought a (cartons) of milk.
2. He ate a (slices) of cheese.
3. She drank a (bottles) of orange juice.
4. We have a (packs) of biscuits.
5. They ate a (kilos) of apples.
6. I bought (a) orange from the store.
7. She ate (a) apple at lunch.
8. My mother eats (an) sandwich every day.
9. They need (an) banana to make juice.
10. He bought a (bottles) of milk.
11. She wants (a) apple from the bag.
12. There is (an) cat sleeping on the sofa.

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) أربع جمل عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Shopping at the market

Friday - mother - orange juice

.....

.....

.....

.....

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



picnic

نزهة خلوية

Azhar Park

crunchy

a bunch of

cooler



healthy

صحي

حديقة الازهر

مقرمش

عنقود من / سبابة

مبرد



share

يشارك

captain

baskets

neighbors

squares



snack

وجبة خفيفة

قائد

سلال

الجيران

مربعات



Other words

كلمات أخرى

tomatoes

طماطم

slice

شريحة

cucumbers

خيار

squares

مربعات

peaches

خوخ

pack

عبوة

bananas

موز

shiny

لامع

beside

بجانب

snack station

ركن الوجبات الخفيفة



Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

ask	يطلب
arrange	يرتب
line	يصف
open	يفتح
pack	يعبئ
join	ينضم
place	يضع

Past ماض

asked
arranged
lined
opened
packed
joined
placed

Present مضارع

bring	يحضر
make	يصنع / يعد
put	يضع
give	يعطي
come	يأتي
eat	يأكل
break	يكسر

Past ماض

brought
made
put
gave
came
ate
broke

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

set up	يجهّز / يرتّب	join next time	ينضم في المرة القادمة
a bunch of	مجموعة من	on Monday	يوم الاثنين
a slice of	شريحة من	beside colorful peaches	بجانب خوخ ملوّن
after eating	بعد الأكل	for dessert	من أجل التحلية
pass to	يمرّ إلى	for each student	لكل طالب

Study the following

1 On Monday, our school held a picnic in the Azhar Park.

- يوم الاثنين، أقامت مدرستنا نزهة في حديقة الأزهر.

2 Students brought baskets to share.

- أحضرت الطلاب سلالاً للمشاركة.

3 My teacher asked my group to set up a healthy lunch.

- طلبت معلمتي من مجموعتي إعداد غداء صحي.

4 We arranged vegetables and fruits first.

- رتبنا الخضروات والفواكه أولاً.

5 We put shiny tomatoes and crunchy cucumbers beside colorful peaches and a bunch of bananas.

- وضعنا طماطم لامعة وخياراً مقرمشاً بجانب خوخ ملون ومجموعة من الموز.

6 I placed a carton of milk and a bottle of orange juice in a cooler with ice.

- وضعت علبة حليب وزجاجة عصير برتقال في مبرد مع الثلج.

7 My friend lined up a slice of bread for each student.

- وضعت صديقتي شريحة خبز لكل طالب.

8 She added a piece of cheese on top of each slice.

- وأضافت قطعة جبن فوق كل شريحة.

Unit 3 What's in the Package?

9 Our class captain opened a pack of biscuits for dessert.

- فتح قائد الصف علبة بسكويت للحلوى.

10 He passed a bar of chocolate to the art teacher to break into squares.

- ناول قطعة شوكولاتة لعلم الرسم ليقطعها إلى مربعات.

11 They gave the food to students who could not come.

- أعطوا الطعام للطلاب الذين لم يستطيعوا الحضور.

12 Everyone thanked us and promised to join next time again soon.

- شكرنا الجميع ووعدوا بالانضمام إلينا في المرة القادمة قريباً.

1 Read the text:

اقرأ النص:

استمع إلى النص:



On Monday, our school held a picnic in the Azhar Park. Students brought baskets to share. My teacher asked my group to set up a healthy lunch. We arranged vegetables and fruits first: shiny tomatoes and crunchy cucumbers beside colorful peaches and a bunch of bananas. Next, we made a small snack station. I placed a carton of milk and a bottle of orange juice in a cooler with ice. My friend lined up a slice of bread for each student and added a piece of cheese on top. Our class captain opened a pack of biscuits for dessert and passed a bar of chocolate to the art teacher to break into squares. After eating, they packed fresh food and gave it to the neighborhood for neighbors who couldn't come. Everyone thanked us and promised to join next time again soon.

يوم الاثنين، أقامت مدرستنا نزهة في حديقة الأزهر. أحضرت الطلاب سلالاً للمشاركة. طلبت معلمتي من مجموعتي إعداد غداء صحي. رتبنا الخضراوات والفواكه أولاً: طماطم لامعة وخياراً مقرمشاً بجانب خوخ ملون ومجموعة من الموز. بعد ذلك، جهزنا ركناً صغيراً للوجبات الخفيفة. وضعت علبة حليب وزجاجة عصير برتقال في مبرد مع الثلج. وضعت صديقتي شريحة خبز لكل طالب وأضافت قطعة جبن فوقها. فتح قائد الصف علبة بسكويت للحلوى وناول قطعة شوكولاتة لعلم الرسم ليقطعها إلى مربعات. بعد الأكل، قاموا بتعبئة طعام طازج وأعطوه لسكان الحي الذين لم يتمكنوا من الحضور. شكرنا الجميع ووعدوا بالانضمام إلينا في المرة القادمة قريباً.



Pronunciation

استمع إلى المفردات:



Silent Letters (b, w)

1. Silent W (w غير منطوقة)

لا يُنطق حرف **w** عندما يأتي قبل حرف **r** في بداية الكلمة.
- يبدأ الصوت مباشرة بحرف **r** بدون نطق الـ **w**.

- **write**

- **wrong**

Silent W



write

يكتب



wrong

خطأ



wrist

رسغ اليد



wrap

يغلف

2. Silent B (b غير منطوقة)

لا يُنطق حرف **b** عندما يأتي بعد حرف **m** في نهاية الكلمة.
- يُنطق حرف **m** فقط، ولا يُنطق حرف **b**.

- **lam**b****

- **thum**b****

Silent B



lamb****

حمل



thumb****

اصبع الإبهام



comb****

مشط



climb****

يتسلق

Silent w

wrote

كتب

Silent b

lamb

حمل

wrapper

غلاف / ملفوف

plumber

سباك

wrist

رسغ اليد

thumb

اصبع الإبهام

Fill in the missing letters:

أكمل الحروف الناقصة:

1 lam _

2 _ rite

3 com _

4 _ rong

5 _ rist

6 lam _

7 clim _

8 thum _

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. We had a picnic in the park.	☐	☐
2. We brought healthy food.	☐	☐
3. For lunch , we had cookies.	☐	☐
4. After eating, we shared food with our neighbors.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- My school held a in the Azhar Park.
a picnic **b** ball **c** text **d** book
- Our class captain opened a pack of biscuits for
a thumb **b** pens **c** comb **d** dessert
- We vegetables and fruits for the picnic.
a joined **b** arranged **c** promised **d** thanked
- My friend lined up a slice of for each student.
a bread **b** milk **c** water **d** juice
- I bought a of flowers for my mom.
a carton **b** slice **c** bag **d** bunch

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

students - come - brought - set up - climb

In the afternoon, at the school hall. We ① a table with bread, cheese, and fruit for everyone. Some students ② cookies and drinks. After eating, we gave food to ③ who couldn't ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة :

Last Thursday, our school organized a charity picnic in the City Garden. Families brought food to share with everyone. My teacher chose my group to prepare a healthy snack table. We started by placing fresh apples and sweet oranges in a big basket. Then we added carrots and lettuce for the salad. I put a bottle of apple juice and a carton of milk in a cold bag with ice. My friend arranged a slice of bread for each child and added a small piece of cheese. Our class leader opened a pack of biscuits for dessert. Another student gave the sports teacher a bar of chocolate to cut into pieces for everyone. After eating, we collected the extra food and gave it to workers in the park. They thanked us warmly and said they hoped to see us again soon.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- They placed the apples and oranges in a
 a bag b basket c box d bottle
- The class leader opened a pack of for dessert.
 a biscuits b water c pencils d toys

B. Answer the following questions:

- What vegetables did the group prepare?
- Why did the workers thank them?
- Who cut the chocolate into pieces?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي :

- where did the school picnic take place
- i placed a carton of milk in a cooler with ice

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن :

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A funny day with my family

picnic - orange juice - dessert

.....

.....

.....

.....

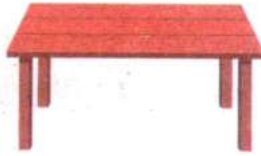
Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



kitchen

المطبخ



counter

الطاولة / المنضدة



bread slices

شرائح الخبز



cheese

جبين



lettuce

خس



sandwiches

ساندوتشات



tomatoes

طماطم



salad

سلطة



meal

وجبة

cleanliness

responsibility

النظافة

مسؤولية

importance

أهمية



Other words

كلمات أخرى

carefully

بعناية

next

التالي

together

معًا

responsible

مسؤولية

proudly

بفخر

delicious

لذيذة

happy

سعيدة

smile

ابتسامة

hands

الأيدي

idea

فكرة

plate

طبق

lunch

الغداء

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

washed her hands	غسلت يديها	on the counter	على الطاولة / على المنضدة
placed the bread	وضعت الخبز	in the kitchen	في المطبخ
make the sandwiches	تحضير الشطائر	As she stopped	عندما توقفت / بينما توقفت
call the family	ناد العائلة	felt happy	شعرت بالسعادة
being responsible	كونها مسؤولة	for the sandwiches / for lunch	من أجل السندويشات / من أجل الغداء
add tomatoes to the salad	أضف الطماطم إلى السلطة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

wash	يغسل
place	يضع
smile	يتسّم
explain	يشرح
call	ينادي
pick	يلتقط / يختار
stop	يتوقف

Past ماضٍ

washed
placed
smiled
explained
called
picked
stopped

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

feel	يشعر
hold	يمسك
make	يصنع / يُعد
know	يعرف

Past ماضٍ

felt
held
made
knew

Study the following

- 1 Reem helped her mother in the kitchen.
- 2 She washed her hands carefully.
- 3 Reem put the bread on the counter.
- 4 Her mother picked some cheese.
- 5 Reem washed the lettuce for the sandwiches.
- 6 They added tomatoes to the salad.
- 7 Reem wanted to make the sandwiches.
- 8 Her mother explained the importance of cleanliness.
- 9 Reem carefully made the sandwiches.
- 10 Let's call the family for lunch.
- 11 Her mother was proud of her.

- ريم ساعدت والدتها في المطبخ.
- غسلت يديها بعناية.
- وضعت ريم الخبز على الطاولة.
- اختارت والدتها بعض الجبن.
- غسلت ريم الخس للسندويشات.
- أضافوا الطماطم إلى السلطة.
- أرادت ريم أن تصنع السندويشات.
- شرحت والدتها أهمية النظافة.
- أعدت ريم السندويشات بعناية.
- هيا بنا ننادي علي العائلة لتناول الغداء.
- كانت والدتها سعيدة بأنها أصبحت مسؤولة.



العنوان Title

Helping Mom

البدء (When? Who? Where?) Beginning

المتوسط (What happened?) Middle

Last week, Reem helped her mother in the kitchen.

First, she washed her hands carefully. Then, she placed the bread slices on the counter. Her mother picked some cheese, and Reem washed the lettuce for the sandwiches.



Together, they decided to add tomatoes to the salad. Reem asked if she could make the sandwiches, and her mother smiled. As she stopped, not knowing what to do next, her mother explained the importance of cleanliness. Reem carefully made the sandwiches and held the plate proudly. She felt happy seeing the finished meal. "Let's call the family for lunch!" her mother said.

النهاية (How did it finish? How did you feel?) Ending

Her mother was happy to see her being responsible in the kitchen. Reem smiled, knowing she helped create a delicious meal.

في الأسبوع الماضي، ساعدت ريم والدتها في المطبخ. أولاً، غسلت يديها بعناية. ثم وضعت شرائح الخبز على الطاولة. اختارت والدتها بعض الجبن، وغسلت ريم الخس لتحضير السندويشات. معاً، قررتا إضافة الحماض إلى السلطة. سألت ريم إن كانت تستطيع إعداد السندويشات، فابتسمت والدتها. وعندما توقفت ريم لأنها لم تعرف ما الذي يجب أن تفعله بعد ذلك، شرحت لها أمها أهمية النظافة. صنعت ريم السندويشات بعناية وحملت الطبق بفخر. شعرت بالسعادة عندما رأت الوجبة جاهزة. وقالت والدتها: «لننادي العائلة لتناول الغداء، كانت والدتها سعيدة لأنها رأت ريم مسؤولة في المطبخ. ابتسمت ريم وهي تعرف أنها ساهمت في إعداد وجبة لذيذة.

Narrative Paragraph

What is a Narrative Paragraph? ما هي الفقرة السردية؟

1 A narrative paragraph is a paragraph that tells a story.

- الفقرة السردية هي فقرة تروي قصة.

2 It describes events in order, usually using past tense verbs.

- تصف أحداثًا بترتيب زمني، وغالبًا تستخدم أفعالًا في الماضي.

الفقرة السردية تجيب على هذه الأسئلة:

- When did the event happen? متى حدثت القصة؟
- Who was involved? من شارك فيها؟
- Where did it happen? أين حدثت؟
- What happened first, next, and last? ما الذي حدث أولاً، ثم بعد ذلك، وأخيراً؟
- How did the story end? كيف انتهت القصة؟
- How did the character feel? كيف شعرت الشخصية؟

الفقرة السردية تستخدم غالباً كلمات ترتيب زمني مثل:

- first, then, after that, finally, last week, yesterday

- أولاً، ثم، بعد ذلك، أخيراً، الأسبوع الماضي، أمس

- The text about Reem helping her mother in the kitchen is a perfect example of a narrative paragraph because:

- النص الذي يتحدث عن مساعدة ريم لوالدتها في المطبخ هو مثال ممتاز للفقرة السردية لأنه:

1. It tells a story ١. يروي قصة
2. It uses the past tense ٢. يستخدم زمن الماضي
3. It follows a time order ٣. يتبع ترتيباً زمنياً
4. It describes the setting ٤. تصف المكان والزمان

- The story happens in the kitchen, last week. - القصة تحدث في المطبخ، الأسبوع الماضي.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Ahmed helped his father in the house.	☐	☐
2. Ahmed put on his gloves.	☐	☐
3. Ahmed ate the flowers.	☐	☐
4. His father showed him how to grow the fruits.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Reem's mother cooks food in the
 a desk b kitchen c bag d book
- The food was very good .It was
 a bad b sad c delicious d tall
- Can I have a of bread, please?
 a bottle of b slice c glass d a bar
- I my mother in the kitchen.
 a cook b decide c play d help

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sandwiches - lunch- hands - tomatoes

Last week, Reem helped her mother in the kitchen. She washed her ①, prepared the bread, and helped make ②, Together, they added ③ to the salad. Reem felt proud of the meal they created and called the family for

④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

Last Friday, Rania and Omar went to the park near their house. The weather was sunny, so they decided to help keep the park clean. First, they picked up the empty bottles from the grass. Then, Omar put the small papers in a trash bag. Rania gave an old man a bottle of water because he looked tired. After that, they cleaned the playground and arranged the benches. A woman who was watching them thanked them for their kindness. Rania and Omar felt happy because they helped make the park beautiful for everyone.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rania and Omar cleaned the
☐ a the street ☐ b the school ☐ c the park ☐ d the market
2. Rania gave the old man
☐ a a bottle of water ☐ b a flower ☐ c a broom ☐ d a book

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Rania and Omar take with them to the park?
4. Who thanked Rania and Omar for their help?
5. Why did the children feel happy at the end?

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Helping mom in the kitchen

Friday - help - wash - happy

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review



on Unit 3



Neighborhood food packages

حي سكني



عبوات الطعام



vegetables

خضراوات



cucumbers

خيار



peaches

خوخ



bananas

موز



milk

حليب



climb the stairs

يصعد الدَّرَج / السلالم



delivery

التسليم / التوصيل



elderly

مسن / عجوز



chocolate

شوكولاتة



dessert

تحلية / حلوى



pack

عبوة



picnic

نزهة خلوية



share

يشارك



counter

الطاولة / المنضدة

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

Countable and Uncountable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

1 Countable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة

⊙ الأسماء المعدودة هي أشياء يمكننا عدّها. يمكننا استخدام **a** و **an** أو الأعداد معها.

a pen قلم	an apple تفاحة	two chairs كرسيان	five books خمسة كتب
--------------	-------------------	----------------------	------------------------

2 Uncountable Nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

⊙ الأسماء غير المعدودة هي أشياء لا يمكن عدّها لأنها لا تتكون من قطع منفصلة. لا نستخدم معها **a** أو **an** أو الأعداد.

water ماء	rice أرز	milk حليب	sugar سكر	cheese جبنة
--------------	-------------	--------------	--------------	----------------

3 Partitive Expressions with Uncountable Nouns تعبيرات التجزئة مع الأسماء غير المعدودة

⊙ عندما نريد التحدث عن كمية محددة من اسم غير معدود، نستخدم تعبير تجزئة. وهو يساعدنا على توضيح المقدار الذي نحتاجه.

- I bought **a carton of** milk. اشتريت علبة حليب.

4 some بعض

⊙ نستخدم **some** مع الأسماء المعدودة أو غير المعدودة في حالة الإثبات،

- I have **some** apples. لدي بعض التفاح.

5 any أي

⊙ نستخدم **any** عندما نسأل سؤالاً (Question) أو ننفي جملة (Negative):

- Do you have **any** milk? هل لديك أي حليب؟
- I don't have **any** biscuits. ليس لدي أي بسكويت.

6 How many? / How much?

⊙ للسؤال عن الأشياء التي تعد نستخدم **How many?** كم للعدد ...؟

⊙ للسؤال عن الأشياء التي لا تعد نستخدم **How much?** كم للكمية ...؟

- **How many** apples do you need? - I need **three** apples

لاحظ:

١- بعد **How many...?** نضع اسم جمع.

- **How much** rice do you want? - I want **a kilo of** rice.

٢- لاحظ استخدام ألفاظ التجزئة عند الإجابة عن السؤال بـ **"How much...?"**.

Pronunciation

Silent Letters (b, w)

1. Silent W (w غير منطوقة)

❶ لا يُنطق حرف **w** عندما يأتي قبل حرف **r** في بداية الكلمة.

- يبدأ الصوت مباشرة بحرف **r** بدون نطق الـ **w**.

- write

- wrong

Silent W



write

يكتب



wrong

خطأ



wrist

رسغ اليد



wrap

يغلف

2. Silent B (b غير منطوقة)

❶ لا يُنطق حرف **b** عندما يأتي بعد حرف **m** في نهاية الكلمة.

- يُنطق حرف **m** فقط، ولا يُنطق حرف **b**.

- lamb

- thumb

Silent B



lamb

حمل



thumb

اصبع الإبهام



comb

مشط



climb

يتسلق



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Helping others

We should help others. We should prepare food packages for poor people. We should buy them everything they need. We should put the food into bags. Helping others is very important.

2

Lesson 2

Shopping at the market

On Friday, my mother went shopping at the market. She bought orange juice, milk, apples, and biscuits for breakfast. She bought a bar of chocolate for dessert. It was a nice day.

3

Lesson 3

A Funny day with my family

We had a funny day with my family. We went on a picnic, drank orange juice and ate dessert. We ate sandwiches. We had fruits for dessert. My mother made us a delicious cake.

4

Lessons 4&5

Helping mom in the kitchen

Last Friday, I helped my mom in the kitchen. We washed the dishes together and cleaned the table. I felt very happy because I spent time with my mom.

5

Al-Azhar test

A picnic in Al Azhar Park

We went to Al Azhar Park yesterday. We had delicious food. We went there with my family. We enjoyed the green trees. It was a nice trip.

6

Test - Unit 3

How to help others

We should help each others. We should help our neighbors. We should prepare food and give it to the poor people. We should share thing with others. Helping others is important.

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. On our school organized a nature walk. (Sunday - Tuesday - Friday)
2. We sandwiches, fresh fruit, and water bottles. (packed - bought - ate)
3. After the walk, we shared snacks with everyone and enjoyed the fresh
(water - air - food)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

kind - tea - picnic - Milk

- A : How did you get ready for the ① ?
 B : We bought milk for ②
 A : What ③ of chocolate did you buy?
 B : ④ chocolate.
 A : Sounds good!

C- Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We need milk to make pancakes.
☐ a bottle of ☐ a ☐ an ☐ any
2. I'm thirsty. Can I have water, please?
☐ a glass of ☐ a box of ☐ a bag of ☐ a piece of
3. There are books on the table..
☐ many ☐ an ☐ a ☐ much
4. I would like cheese on my sandwich.
☐ a piece of ☐ an ☐ a ☐ a bottle of

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحح الكلمة التي تحتها خط:

1. I ate a cake for desert
2. I have an cat.

3. He bought a bottles of orange juice.
4. Sha has an pencil in her hand.

D- Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة :

On Tuesday, our school had a picnic in the park. Families brought food to share. My group set up healthy food with fruits like apples and bananas, and vegetables like carrots. We also had juice and water to drink. For dessert, we had cookies and cake. After eating, we gave the fresh food to the neighbors. Everyone had fun and said they would come next time!

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

	T	F
1. The school had a picnic on Friday.	☐	☐
2. They drank milk.	☐	☐

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. We had a picnic on
- a** Monday **b** Friday **c** Sunday
4. My group set up healthy food with fruits like
- a** apples **b** chips **c** candy
5. After the picnic, we gave the fresh food to the
- a** neighbors **b** friends **c** teachers

E- Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن :

A picnic in Al Azhar Park

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

family - food- trees - nice

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 3

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Reem helped her mother in the kitchen last week.	☐	☐
2. Reem didn't wash her hands before starting.	☐	☐
3. Reem's mother picked some cheese.	☐	☐
4. They decided to add tomatoes to the salad.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- our schoola picnic in the Azhar Park.
a held **b** ate **c** thanked **d** cooked
- My mother bought a of chocolate for dessert.
a slice **b** bar **c** bottle **d** carton
- The man is letters to our houses.
a delivering **b** eating **c** cooking **d** cutting
- I ate sandwich after lunch.
a an **b** a **c** any **d** many
- How manyare in your bag?
a pen **b** rice **c** pens **d** water
- Can I haveof water, please?
a a bottle **b** slice **c** pack **d** piece

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

market – apples – some– bags – stairs

Last week, Sara and her brother Ahmed prepared food bags for families in their neighborhood. They went with their father to the busy ❶to buy fresh items. Sara chose a kilo of ❷, while Ahmed bought ❸ rice After they went home, they put everything in ❹

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

On Wednesday, our class went on a picnic to the Green Garden. Every group brought something healthy to share. My group was responsible for preparing the lunch table. First, we washed the apples and cut the bananas into small pieces. Then, we placed the tomatoes, cucumbers, and lettuce on a big plate for a fresh salad. I put a bottle of water and a box of orange juice in a cooler to keep them cold. My friend arranged slices of bread and added cheese to make simple sandwiches. Before we ate, our teacher reminded us to keep the park clean. After lunch, we threw the trash in the bin and enjoyed playing together.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The class went on a picnic to the
 a museum b Green Garden c zoo d beach
- They put the drinks in a to keep them cold.
 a basket b box c cooler d bag

B. Answer the following questions:

- What did the group prepare first for the lunch table?
- What did the friend add to the slices of bread?
- What did the students do after lunch?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I have (an) banana in my lunchbox.
- I'm thirsty. Can I have a (bottles) of water, please?
- Let's have (a) orange.
- There is (an) pen on the table.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم اللائي:

- she helped her mother
- what did the students do

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

How to help others

neighbors - food - share

.....

.....

.....

Review 1



on units
1, 2 & 3

Objectives of Review 1

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ١ إلى ٣.

- To evaluate progress in Units 1 - 3.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ في استيعاب الوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

★ Units 1 - 2 & 3

Unit 1

This is Where I Live

هنا أعيش



environment

البيئة



building

مبنى / بناء



city

مدينة



village

قرية



oasis

واحة



river

نهر



well

بئر مياه



project

مشروع



desert

صحراء



palm trees

شجر النخيل



boat



sail

قارب

يبحر



riverbank

ضفة النهر



crops

محاصيل

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Past Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

1 Usage: الاستخدام

يستخدم الزمن الماضي البسيط للحديث عن الأفعال التي حدثت بالفعل في الماضي.

2 Form التكوين

يتكون الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل بإضافة **ied / ed / d** للأفعال المنتظمة والأفعال الغير منتظمة تحفظ كما هي:

love → lov**ed**

help → help**ed**

study → studi**ed**

see → sa**w**

swim → swa**m**

3 Negative Form صيغة النفي

للتعبير عن شيء لم يحدث نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

did not (didn't) + verb مصدر الفعل

- I **didn't** watch TV yesterday

لم أشاهد التلفاز أمس.

4 Question Form صيغة السؤال

● طرح سؤال في الماضي نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Did + subject + verb مصدر الفعل؟

- Did you go to the park last week?

هل ذهبت إلى الحديقة الأسبوع الماضي؟

5 Key words الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	ago	منذ
last night / week / year	الليلة الماضية / الأسبوع الماضي / السنة الماضية	in 2000	في تاريخ سابق (في عام ٢٠٠٠)
when I was young	عندما كنت صغيراً	earlier today	في وقت سابق اليوم
a few days ago	منذ عدة أيام		

Pronunciation

Silent K



knee

ركبة



knife

سكين



knock

يطرق



know

يعرف

عندما يأتي حرف k في أول الكلمة قبل n لا ينطق!

Silent L



walk

يمشي



talk

يتحدث



half

نصف



should

ينبغي

عندما يأتي "l" بعد "a" أو "o" لا ينطق أحياناً.

Unit 2

Our World, Our Responsibility

عالمنا، مسئوليتنا



tote bag

حقيبة قماشية



go green

الحفاظ على البيئة /
صديق للبيئة

pollution

تلوث



litter

نفايات / قمامة



water

الماء



electricity

الكهرباء



gas

الغاز

surroundings

البيئة المحيطة

planet

كوكب

clean

نظيف

reduce

يقلل

reuse

يعيد الاستخدام

recycle

يعيد التدوير

3Rs

(التقليل - إعادة الاستخدام - إعادة التدوير)

resources

الموارد

run out

تنفذ / تنتهي

taking care

الاعتناء بـ

kind

عطوف

food

الطعام

safe

آمن

sunlight

ضوء الشمس

remind

يُذكر

water

الماء

electricity

الكهرباء

bottle

زجاجة

paper

ورق

plastic

بلاستيك

apply

يطبق

warm

دافئ

wisely

بحكمة

soil

تربة زراعية

strong

قوي

together

سويا

animals

الحيوانات

plants

النباتات

Adjectives

الصفات

cold	بارد	gentle	هادئ/ لطيف
beautiful	جميل	peaceful	هادئ/ سلمي
tall	طويل	happy	سعيد
green	أخضر	relaxed	مسترخي
wide	واسع	delicious	لذيذ
big	كبير	wonderful	رائع

Language in Use

وظائف لغوية

Conjunctions أدوات الربط

● سنتعلم عن أدوات الربط، وهي كلمات مهمة تساعدنا على ربط أجزاء الجملة معًا وجعل الكلام سلسًا وواضحًا:

1 nor ولا

- تستخدم لإضافة فكرة سلبية ثانية.

- We don't burn plastic, nor do we throw it on the ground.

- نحن لا نحرق البلاستيك، ولا نرميه على الأرض.

● ملاحظة: "nor" تأتي غالبًا بعد جملة سلبية وتضيف فكرة سلبية أخرى.

2 so لذلك / إذن

تستخدم لتوضيح النتيجة بعد فعل شيء.

- We sort the waste, so our neighborhood stays clean.

نحن نفصل النفايات، لذلك تظل حيئنا نظيفًا.

3 because لأن / بسبب

تستخدم لتوضيح السبب أو العلة لفعل شيء.

- We recycle paper because it helps save trees.

نحن نعيد تدوير الورق لأنه يساعد على حفظ الأشجار.

4 أدوات ربط أخرى شائعة

الكلمة	معناها	مثال بسيط
and	و	I like apples and oranges. - أحب التفاح والبرتقال.
but	لكن (للتناقض)	I like apples, but I don't like bananas. - أحب التفاح، لكن لا أحب الموز.
or	أو	Do you want tea or juice? - هل تريد شاي أم عصير؟



Pronunciation

(R)-controlled words

الكلمات التي يتحكم فيها حرف (r)

- عندما يأتي حرف **r** بعد أحد حروف العلة (الحروف المتحركة) (**a, e, i, o, u**) فإنه يغيّر صوت هذا الحرف.
- لا نسمع صوت حرف العلة وحده، بل نسمع صوتًا جديدًا ناتجًا عن دمج الحرفين معًا.
- لهذا نسميها **R-controlled vowels** (حروف العلة التي يتحكم فيها **R**).
- أنواع الأصوات مع أمثلة:

(ar) words



star نجمة



car سيارة

(ir) words



bird طائر



girl فتاة



birthday عيد ميلاد

عيد ميلاد

(or) words



world عالم



corn ذرة



storm عاصفة

(er) words



teacher

معلم / معلمة



tiger

نمر



sister

أخت



runner عداء

term

فصل / مدة دراسية

(ur) words



nurse

ممرضة



purple

بنفسجي



furniture

أثاث



fur

فرو

Unit 3

What's in the Package?

ما الذي يوجد داخل الطرد؟



Neighborhood food packages vegetables cucumbers peaches

حي سكني



عبوات الطعام



خضراوات



خيار



خوخ



bananas

موز



milk

حليب



climb the stairs

يصعد الدَّرَج / السلالم



delivery

التسليم / التوصيل



elderly

مسن / عجوز



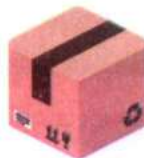
chocolate

شوكولاتة



dessert

تحلية / حلوى



pack

عبوة



picnic

نزهة خلوية



share

يشارك



healthy

صحي



snack

وجبة خفيفة



cheese

جبنة



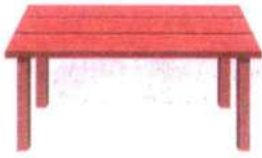
bread slices

شرائح الخبز



kitchen

المطبخ



counter الطاولة / المنضدة



lettuce خس



sandwiches ساندوتشات



tomatoes طماطم



salad سلطة



meal وجبة

Azhar Park
crunchy
a bunch of
cooler
cleanliness
responsibility

حديقة الازهر
مقرمش
عنقود من / سباطة
مبرد
النظافة
مسؤولية

captain
baskets
neighbors
squares
importance

قائد
سلال
الجيران
مربعات
أهمية

Language in use

وظائف لغوية

Countable and Uncountable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

1 Countable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة

⊙ الأسماء المعدودة هي أشياء يمكننا عدّها. يمكننا استخدام **a** و **an** أو الأعداد معها.

a pen قلم an apple تفاح two chairs كرسيًا five books خمسة كتب cheese جبن

2 Uncountable Nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

⊙ الأسماء غير المعدودة هي أشياء لا يمكن عدّها لأنها لا تتكون من قطع منفصلة. لا نستخدم معها **a** أو **an** أو الأعداد.

water ماء rice أرز milk حليب sugar سكر cheese جبن

3 Partitive Expressions with Uncountable Nouns تعبيرات التجزئة مع الأسماء غير المعدودة

⊙ عندما نريد التحدث عن كمية محددة من اسم غير معدود، نستخدم تعبير تجزئة. وهو يساعدنا على توضيح المقدار الذي نحتاجه.

- I bought **a carton of** milk. اشتريت علبة حليب.

4 some بعض

⊙ نستخدم **some** مع الأسماء المعدودة أو غير المعدودة في حالة الإثبات:

- I have **some** apples. لدي بعض التفاح.

Review 1

5 any أي

● نستخدم **any** عندما نسأل سؤالاً (Question) أو ننفي جملة (Negative):

- Do you have **any** milk? هل لديك أي حليب؟
- I don't have **any** biscuits. ليس لدي أي بسكويت.

6 How many? / How much?

● للسؤال عن الأشياء التي تعد نستخدم **How many?** كم للعدد...؟

● للسؤال عن الأشياء التي لا تعد نستخدم **How much?** كم للكمية...؟

- **How many** apples do you need? - I need **three** apples

لاحظ:

١- بعد **How many...?** نضع اسم جمع.

- **How much** rice do you want? - I want **a kilo of** rice.

٢- لاحظ استخدام ألفاظ التجزئة عند الإجابة عن السؤال بـ **"How much...?"**.

Pronunciation

Silent Letters (b, w)

1. Silent W (w غير منطوقة)

● لا يُنطق حرف **w** عندما يأتي قبل حرف **r** في بداية الكلمة.

- يبدأ الصوت مباشرة بحرف **r** بدون نطق الـ **w**.

- **w**rite - **w**rong

Silent W



write

يكتب



wrong

خطأ



wrist

رسغ اليد



wrap

يغلف

2. Silent B (b غير منطوقة)

● لا يُنطق حرف **b** عندما يأتي بعد حرف **m** في نهاية الكلمة.

- يُنطق حرف **m** فقط، ولا يُنطق حرف **b**.

- **lamb** - **thumb**

Silent B



lamb

حمل



thumb

اصبع الإبهام



comb

مشط



climb

يتسلق

Test on Units 1, 2 & 3

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Sarah went to her uncle's house.	☐	☐
2. Ali was taking photos.	☐	☐
3. Everyone was happy.	☐	☐
4. Sarah was at home.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The Nile flows through Egypt.
 a River b Sea c Lake d Oasis
- I to the market yesterday.
 a go b going c went d goes
- To protect our, we must take care of nature and animals..
 a plan b plane c plant d planet
- The teacher didn't shout, did she get angry.
 a so b or c nor d but

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

happy - food - delicious - lunch - slice

On Monday, our school had a picnic in the park. Families brought ① to share. My group set up a healthy ② with fruits, vegetables, and snacks. After eating, we gave ③ food to neighbors who couldn't come. Everyone was ④

Review 1

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last week, Omar helped his father in the kitchen. First, he washed his hands. Then, he placed the bread slices on the table. His father picked some cheese, and Omar washed the vegetables. Together, they made sandwiches. Omar felt proud when the meal was ready.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Last, Omar helped his father in the kitchen.
 a month b year c Friday d week
- Omar felt when the meal was ready.
 a hot b proud c bad d wide

B. Answer the following questions:

- Who did Omar help in the kitchen?
- What did Omar wash before making the sandwiches?
- Where did Omar place the bread slices?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- We (walk) to the park yesterday.
- I wanted to play outside, (because) it was raining.
- I'm thirsty. Can I have (an) glass of water, please?
- (Does) you go to the park last week?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- the weather was rainy and cold
- do you know my friend

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) أربع جمل عن:

Helping my mother in the kitchen

washed - bread slices - lettuce

.....

.....

.....

.....



Let's Celebrate

هيا نحتفل

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- Talk about different celebrations using simple sentences. يتحدث الطالب عن الاحتفالات المختلفة باستخدام جمل بسيطة.
- Use adjectives to describe people, objects, and events. يستخدم الطالب الصفات لوصف الأشخاص، والأشياء، والأحداث.
- Pronounce plural nouns with final -s correctly (/s/, /z/, /Iz/).

ينطق الطالب الأسماء الجمع التي تنتهي بـ 's' بشكل صحيح (/s/, /z/, /Iz/).

Reading:

- Read short texts about different celebrations and understand the main idea. يقرأ الطالب نصوصاً قصيرة عن الاحتفالات المختلفة وفهم الفكرة الرئيسية.
- Identify adjectives and words with final -s in context. يحدد الطالب الصفات والكلمات التي تنتهي بـ 's' في سياقها.
- Read and understand blog examples, recognizing greetings, body, and conclusion. يقرأ الطالب ويفهم أمثلة المدونات، والتعرف على التحية، والمحتوى والخاتمة.

Listening:

- Listen carefully to short texts or dialogs about celebrations and blogs. يستمع الطالب بعناية إلى نصوص قصيرة أو حوارات حول الاحتفالات والمدونات.
- Identify key details such as events, dates, activities, and descriptions. يحدد الطالب التفاصيل الرئيسية مثل الأحداث والتواريخ، والأنشطة، والأوصاف.
- Recognize adjectives and plural nouns with final -s in spoken sentences. يتعرف الطالب على الصفات والأسماء الجمع التي تنتهي بـ 's' في الجمل المنطوقة.
- Distinguish between the /s/, /z/, and /Iz/ sounds in words. يميز الطالب بين أصوات النهايات /s/, /z/ and /Iz/ في الكلمات.

Writing:

- Write a blog about a celebration. يكتب الطالب مدونة عن احتفال.
- Use adjectives to describe people, objects, and events form plural nouns using final -s correctly. يستخدم الطالب الصفات لوصف الأشخاص والأشياء والأحداث باستخدام النهايات 's' بشكل صحيح.
- Organize ideas clearly with a beginning, middle, and closing. ينظم الطالب الأفكار بوضوح من البداية ووسط ونهاية.
- Design a "Thank You" card to the teacher. ينظم الطالب بطاقة ،شكراً لك، للمعلم.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



exchange gifts

يتبادل الهدايا



perform music

يعزف موسيقى



play a game

يلعب لعبة



hide-and-seek

لعبة الاستقصاية



eat special food

يتناول طعام خاص



socialize with friends

يتواصل مع الأصدقاء



Other words

كلمات أخرى

family gathering

تجمع عائلي

kindness

العطف

band

فرقة موسيقية

weekend

نهاية الأسبوع

stage

المسرح

amazing

مدهش

celebration

احتفال

oud

آلة العود

delicious desserts

حلويات لذيذة

chess

الشطرنج

together

معًا

grilled chicken

دجاج مشوي



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأجرام وعبارة

during the family gathering

اثناء التجمع العائلي

stuffed grape leaves

محشي ورق عنب

at the party

في الحفلة

on holidays

في الإجازات

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

cheer	يهتف
clap	يصفق
exchange	يتبادل
laugh	يضحك
enjoy	يستمتع
perform	يؤدي / يعزف

Past ماض

cheered
clapped
exchanged
laughed
enjoyed
performed

Present مضارع

have / has	يملك
bring	يحضر
sit	يجلس
win	يفوز

Past ماض

had
brought
sat
won

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

The past simple tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

1 Usage: الاستخدام

● يعبر عن شيء حدث في الماضي وانتهى.

2 Form: التكوين

أفعال منتظمة ويضاف إليها: d, ed, ied

- talk → talk **ed** - perform → perform **ed**

أفعال غير منتظمة تحفظ تصريفاتها

- sit → sat - win → won

3 Questions: السؤال

● عند السؤال بـ (هل) نستخدم:

Did + فاعل + inf. فعل في المصدر

- Did you bring anything?

- Yes, I did.

● إجابة مثبتة:

- No, I didn't.

● إجابة منفية:

4 Key words الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	past	الماضي
ago	منذ	last (week - year - month)	الماضي

Study the following

1 Did you enjoy the family gathering we had last weekend?

هل استمتعت بلقاء العائلة الذي أقمنه في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي؟

2 Everyone clapped and cheered.

صفق الجميع وهتفوا.

3 I played a game of chess with Kareem and he won.

لعبت مباراة شطرنج مع كريم وفاز.

4 We got to eat special food like grilled chicken and cake.

تناولنا طعاماً مميزاً مثل الدجاج المشوي والكيك.

5 The games were too fun.

كانت الألعاب ممتعة جداً.

6 We also exchange gifts and socialized with friends?

تبادلنا أيضاً الهدايا وتواصلنا مع الأصدقاء.

7 Did you bring anything?

هل أحضرت أي شيء؟

1 Listen and read:

استمع وأقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:



A Day with Family and Friends يوم مع العائلة والأصدقاء

Salma : Hi Amr! Did you enjoy the family gathering we had last weekend?

سلمى: مرحباً يا عمرو، هل استمتعت بتجمع العائلة الذي أقمنه في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي؟

Amr : Yes, it was amazing! We sat together, talked, and even listened to my uncle perform music on his oud.

عمرو: نعم، كان رائعاً! جلسنا معاً وتحدثنا حتى استمعنا إلى عمي وهو يعزف الموسيقى على العود.

Salma : I remember! Everyone clapped and cheered.

سلمى: أتذكر! صفق الجميع وهتفوا.

Amr : The games were fun too. I played a game of chess with Kareem, and he won.

عمرو: الألعاب كانت ممتعة أيضاً. لعبت مباراة شطرنج مع كريم وفاز.

Salma : I played a game of hide-and-seek with my cousins, and we all enjoyed it.

سلمى: أنا لعبت لعبة الاستغماية مع أبناء عمي واستمتعنا جميعاً.

Amr : The food was delicious. We got to eat special food like grilled chicken, and cake.

عمرو: الطعام كان لذيذاً، تناولنا طعاماً مميزاً مثل الدجاج المشوي والكعك.

Salma : Did you bring anything?

سلمى: هل أحضرت أي شيء؟

Amr : I brought fruit salad, and everyone liked it. We also exchanged gifts and socialized with friends and family all day.

عمرو: أحضرت سلطة فواكه، وأعجب بها الجميع. كما تبادلنا الهدايا واجتمعنا مع الأصدقاء والعائلة طوال اليوم.



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Last year we enjoyed the family gathering.	☐	☐
2. We played a game of chess.	☐	☐
3. My brother was good at playing the drum.	☐	☐
4. I played hide-and-seek with my cousins.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The is a kind of musical instruments.
 a oud b chess c gift d hide-and-seek
- During the family gathering, we gifts together.
 a socialize b exchange c perform d play
- My uncle music on his oud.
 a performed b brought c ate d got
- My mother cooked grape leaves last weekend.
 a thanked b stuffed c played d socialized
- Fruit salad is a delicious
 a dessert b music c cake d game
- Did you music yesterday?
 a perform b performing c performs d performed
- We brought salad and everyone it.
 a likes b liked c liking d like

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

special - stage - games - socialized - gifts

Yesterday, we had a party in the garden. We played many ① We brought ② and exchanged them together. Then, we ate ③ food and ④ with friends all day.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Everyone (like) the party last week.
2. We (eat) girllled chicken yesterday.
3. (Does) you enjoy the family gathering last weekend?
4. I (bring) some fruit salad and everyone liked it.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. their games were fun
2. did you bring anything

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربع جمل عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Family gathering

last week – perform – exchange gifts

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



wear special clothes

يرتدي ملابس خاصة



clap

يصفق



take photos

يلتقط صوراً



fireworks

ألعاب نارية



balloons

بالونات



fence

سور



Other words

كلمات أخرى

playground

ملعب المدرسة

during

خلال

unforgettable

لا يُنسى

video

فيلم فيديو

happily

بسعادة

the best part

الجزء الأفضل

loudly

بصوت عالٍ

Adjectives

صفات

beautiful

جميل

enormous

ضخم

clean

نظيف

loud

عالٍ

special

خاص

bright

لامع

ready

مستعد

colorful

ملون

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

smiled happily

in the center of

at night

ابتسم بسعادة

في منتصف

ليلاً

cheered loudly

on an enormous table

socialize with

هتفوا بصوت عالٍ

علي منضدة ضخمة

يتواصل مع

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

look	يبدو
laugh	يضحك
smile	يتسم
start	يبدأ

Past ماضٍ

looked
laughed
smiled
started

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

wear	يرتدي
sing	يغني
take photos	يلتقط صوراً
come	يأتي
light up	يضيء

Past ماضٍ

wore
sang
took photos
came
lit up

Study the following

- The school playground looked beautiful during the celebration.
- كان ملعب المدرسة يبدو جميلاً أثناء الاحتفال.
- Everyone clapped, laughed and enjoyed the music together.
- صفق الجميع وضحكوا واستمتعوا بالموسيقى معاً.
- We played games, sang songs and socialized with our friends.
- لعبنا الألعاب، غنينا الأغاني، واجتمعنا مع أصدقائنا.
- Many students took photos to remember the special day.
- التقط العديد من الطلاب صوراً لتذكر هذا اليوم المميز.
- The best part came at night when the fireworks started.
- جاء الجزء الأفضل في الليل عندما بدأت الألعاب النارية.
- They lit up the sky with beautiful colors and everyone cheered loudly.
- أضاءت السماء بألوان جميلة، و صفق الجميع بصوت عالٍ.
- It was an unforgettable celebration that we will always remember.
- لقد كانت احتفالاً لا ينسى وستنذكره دائماً.

Read the text:

اقرأ النص:

استمع إلى النص:



Unforgettable Celebration

احتفال لا ينسى

The school playground looked beautiful during the celebration. There were colorful balloons hanging from the fences and shiny lights all around the place.

كان ملعب المدرسة يبدو جميلاً أثناء الاحتفال. كانت هناك بالونات ملونة معلقة على الأسوار وأنوار لامعة في كل مكان.

A band played a loud song. The students wore their special clothes and smiled happily. Everyone clapped, laughed, and enjoyed the music together.

عزفت فرقة موسيقية أغنية صاخبة. كان الطلاب يرتدون ملابسهم الخاصة ويبتسمون بسعادة. صفق الجميع وضحكوا واستمتعوا بالموسيقى معاً.



In the center of the playground, a large cake was placed carefully on an enormous table. Our teacher was very happy because the playground looked clean, bright, and ready for the party.

في وسط الملعب، وُضعت كعكة كبيرة بعناية على طاولة ضخمة. كانت معلمتنا سعيدة جداً، لأن الملعب بدا نظيفاً ومضيئاً وجاهزاً للحفلة.

We played games, sang songs, and socialized with our friends.

Many students took photos to remember the special day, and some even made short videos. The best part came at night when the fireworks started.

لعبنا الألعاب، غنينا الأغاني، وتحديثنا مع أصدقائنا. التقط العديد من الطلاب صوراً لتذكر هذا اليوم المميز. صورت بعضهم صوراً مقاطع فيديو قصيرة. وجاء الجزء الأفضل في الليل عندما بدأت الألعاب النارية.

They lit up the sky with beautiful colors, and everyone cheered loudly. It was an unforgettable celebration that we will always remember.

أضاءت السماء بألوان جميلة، وصفق الجميع بصوت عالٍ من الفرح. لقد كان احتفالاً لا ينسى وسنذكره دائماً.

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Adjectives الصفات

الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء و تأتي قبلها أو بعد verb to be فعل «يكون» :

- The colorful balloons floated in the air.

لاحظ أن colorful تصف balloon.

فالصفات تصف الآتي فهي تخبرنا ماذا يبدو، يشعر:

1 Describing people: تصف الناس :

tall	طويل	short	قصير	kind	عطوف
friendly	ودود	happy	سعيد		

2 Describing objects: تصف الأشياء :

big	كبير	small	صغير	colorful	ملون
shiny	لامع	soft	ناعم		

3 Describing places: تصف الأماكن :

quiet	هادئ	busy	مزدحم	peaceful	آمن
beautiful	جميل	crowded	مزدحم		

4 Describing feelings/events: تصف المشاعر والأحداث :

exciting	مثير	fun	متعة	amazing	مدهش
wonderful	رائع	boring	ممل		

Checkup Exercises ✓

Circle the adjectives in each sentence:

ضع دائرة على الصفات في كل جملة :

1. The kind teacher helped all the students with their work.

2. I have a colorful kite that flies high in the sky.

3. The peaceful village was surrounded by tall palm trees.

4. She felt excited when she saw her friends at the park.

5. The wonderful school concert made everyone smile.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. There was a celebration in our school library.	☐	☐
2. We enjoyed listening to the music.	☐	☐
3. The students took photos with their friends.	☐	☐
4. We saw the fireworks in the sky.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We had a/an day.
 a shiny b exciting c friendly d kind
- The school trip was
 a fun b soft c kind d tall
- Sara bought a dress for the school party. SB
 a wooden b beautiful c angry d kind
- The boy helped his friend carry the heavy bag. SB
 a friendly b lazy c rude d soft
- Omar felt when he lost his pencil case. SB
 a happy b sad c noisy d colorful
- The large cake was carefully on an enormous table.
 a clapped b placed c played d laughed
- We went to a park full of green trees and flowers. SB
 a red b quiet c hard d tall
- The sports day made all the students cheer and clap. SB
 a boring b exciting c cold d colorful

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

took - lit - fireworks - playground - came

There was a big celebration in our school yesterday. It was in the ① We cleaned the playground. Some students sang beautiful songs and the students wore their special clothes. We ② photos to remember this day. There were ③ and ④ up the sky with beautiful colors.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Adel lives in a small village. There are many celebrations in his village. Adel and the villagers decorate the streets with colorful balloons. They light up fireworks in the sky. Everyone in the celebration wears special clothes. They sing songs, laugh and clap. They are very happy. They take photos and make short videos with their mobiles.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The villagers decorate the with colorful balloons.
 a fences b streets c houses d schools
- Everyone in the celebration wears special
 a galabeyas b clothes c shirts d hats

B. Answer the following questions:

- Where does Adel live?
- What do people make with their mobiles in the celebration?
- What's the main idea of the text?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- the city was very crowded
- how was the celebration last week

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربع جمل عن:

An unforgettable celebration

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

balloons - photos - remember

.....

.....

.....

.....

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



hang shiny ribbons

يعلق شرائط لامعة



candles

شموع



decorate

يزين



cheerful

مبتهج



wrapped the giveaways

يغلف الهدايا



guests

ضيوف



Other words

كلمات أخرى

happiness

pictures

friendship

wish

سعادة

صور

ال صداقة

أمنية

the fun

love

tasty food

laughter

المتعة

الحب

طعام لذيذ

الضحك



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

on the top

at the end

make a wish

علي القمة

في النهاية

يتمنى أمنية

blow out

full of joy

ينفخ

ملئ بالمرح

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

prepare	يجهز
share	يشارك
receive	يستلم
decorate	يزين
join	ينضم / يشارك
wrap	يغلف

Past ماضٍ

prepared
shared
received
decorated
joined
wrapped

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

hang	يعلق
blow out	ينفخ (الشموع)
wake up	يستيقظ
put	يضع

Past ماضٍ

hung
blew
woke up
put

Study the following

1 Last Friday, Zein celebrated his birthday at home.

في يوم الجمعة الماضي، احتفل زين بعيد ميلاده في المنزل.

2 He woke up excited and started getting prepared for the big party.

استيقظ متحمساً وبدأ في الاستعداد للحفلة الكبيرة.

3 His father helped him hang the balloons.

ساعده والده في تعليق البالونات.

4 Zein's mother baked a delicious cake.

خبزت والدته زين كيكاً لذيذاً.

5 They hung shiny ribbons and bright lights to make the house cheerful.

علقوا شرائط لامعة وأضواء مشرقة لجعل المنزل يبدو مبهِجاً.

6 They sang songs, played games and enjoyed tasty food.

غنوا الأغاني، ولعبوا الألعاب، واستمتعوا بالطعام اللذيذ.

7 It was a wonderful birthday celebration full of joy and laughter.

لقد كانت حفلة عيد ميلادك رائعة مليئة بالفرح والضحك.

Read the text:

اقرأ النص:

استمع إلى النص:



Zein's Birthday Party

عيد ميلاد زين

Last Friday, Zein celebrated his birthday at home. In the morning, he woke up excited and started getting prepared for the big day. With his sister's help, he cleaned the living room and decorated it with colorful balloons. His father helped him hang the balloons. They hung shiny ribbons and bright lights to make the house cheerful. Zein's mother baked a delicious cake, and he put candles on the top. In the afternoon, Zein wrapped the giveaways he had bought for his friends because he wanted to share his happiness. When the guests arrived, everyone wore a party hat and joined the fun. They sang songs, played games, and enjoyed tasty food. At the end, Zein blew out the candles, made a wish, and received gifts from his friends. It was a wonderful birthday celebration full of joy and laughter.



في يوم الجمعة الماضي، احتفل زين بعيد ميلاده في المنزل. في الصباح استيقظ وهو متحمس وبدأ في الاستعداد ليومه الكبير. بمساعدة أخته، نظف غرفة المعيشة وزينها بالبالونات الملونة. ساعده والده في تعليق البالونات. علقوا اشرطة لامعة وأضواء مشرقة لجعل المنزل مبهجا. خبزت أمه كعكة لذيذة، ووضع زين الشموع فوقها، في فترة بعد الظهر، قام زين بتغليف الهدايا الصغيرة التي اشتراها لأصدقائه لأنه أراد أن يشاركهم سعادته. عندما وصل الضيوف، ارتدي الجميع قبعات الحفلة وانضموا إلى المرح. غنوا الأغاني، ولعبوا الألعاب، واستمتعوا بالطعام اللذيذ. في النهاية نفخ زين الشموع وتمني أمنية، وتلقي الهدايا من أصدقائه. لقد كانت حفلة عيد ميلاد رائعة مليئة بالضحك والفرح.

Pronunciation

نطق اللاحقة (s) في صيغة الجمع Suffix. - Final - s sound in plural

نستخدم صيغة الجمع للأسماء عندما نتحدث عن أكثر من شخص، حيوان أو شيء.

نضع (es) أو (s) في نهاية معظم الكلمات في حالة الجمع:

one friend	→	friends	box	→	boxes
one cat	→	cats	watch	→	watches
one book	→	books	glass	→	glasses

لاحظ أن one تساوي a/an قبل الأسماء المفرد.

وهناك أسماء شاذة تحفظ مثل:

child	→	children	man	→	men
-------	---	----------	-----	---	-----

⊙ تنطق اللاحقة (s) بثلاث أصوات مختلفة حسب الحرف الذي يسبقها:

- ينطق حرف "s" كصوت (s) إذا انتهت الكلمة المفردة بصوت من الأصوات غير المنطوقة مثل:

/p/, /t/, /k/, /f/, /θ/

guest → **guests** → /s/ book → **books** → /s/

- ينطق حرف "s" كصوت (z) إذا انتهت الكلمة المفردة بصوت من الأصوات المنطوقة مثل:

/n/, /l/, /m/

ribbon → **ribbons** → /z/ candle → **candles** → /z/

- ينطق حرف "s" كصوت (ɪz) عند إضافة (es) للأسم المفرد التي ينتهي بالأصوات الآتية:

/s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/

house → **houses** → /ɪz/ box → **boxes** → /ɪz/

⊙ ملاحظات عند إضافة (s) إلى الفعل:

- عندما يكون الفاعل (الاسم) مفردا، يتم إضافة حرف (s) إلى الفعل (زمن المضارع البسيط):

- The **girl** **hides** under the table.

- عندما يكون الفاعل (الاسم) جمعا، لا نضيف حرف (s) إلى الفعل (زمن المضارع البسيط):

- The **boys** **kick** the ball.

Checkup Exercises ✓

1 Change the sentences from singular to plural:

غير الجمل من صيغة المفرد إلى صيغة الجمع:

1. The cat sits on the chair.

→ The **cats** **sit** on the chairs.

2. The child plays in the garden.

→ The **children** **play** in the gardens.

3. The bus stops at the corner.

4. The fox hides under the tree.

5. The dish is on the table.

2 Change the word into plural and put it in a sentence:

غير الكلمات من صيغة المفرد إلى صيغة الجمع وضعها في جملة:

1. giveaway : giveaways → **Zein wrapped the giveaways yesterday.**

2. friend: friends →

3. guest: guests →

4. house: houses →

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I put on my birthday cake.
 a guests b trees c candles d games
- At the end, Hisham gifts from his friends.
 a received b baked c arrived d joined
- The came to the party carrying gifts.
 a candles b ribbons c lights d guests
- I the giveaways on my birthday party.
 a played b hung c sang d wrapped
- We blew the candles.
 a on b out c for d up
- The birthday celebration was full of joy and It was great.
 a sickness b laughter c sadness d fences
- My father helped me the balloons.
 a hang b wrap c eat d wear
- The girls their houses every birthday party.
 a decorates b decorating c decorate d is decorating

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

share - shiny - decorated - gifts - baked

Yesterday, we celebrated my mother's birthday party. Everyone in our family woke up in the morning. I ① our garden with balloons. We hung ② ribbons. My mother baked a delicious cake. We bought ③ We all ④ happiness.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The dogs (**hides**) under the car.
2. The (**dish**) are on the table.
3. The boys (**kicks**) the ball.
4. There are three (**watch**) on the bed.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. When s your birthday party

2. birthday celebrations help people show love

5 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربع جمل عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Your birthday party

celebrated - candles - friends

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



Labor Day

عيد العمال



workers

عمال



hard work

عمل جاد



neighborhood

حي سكني



colorful card

كارت ملون



wave flags

يلوح بالأعلام



honor

يُكرم



heroes

أبطال



brave soldiers

جنود شجعان

Sinai

سيناء

happy moments

لحظات سعيدة

free

حر

appreciate

يقدر

efforts

مجهودات

proud

فخور

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماض

Present مضارع

Past ماض

join ينضم
share يشارك
appreciate يُقدر
free يحرر

joined
shared
appreciated
freed

make يصنع
sing يغني
do يفعل

made
sang
did

Writing skills



How to write a blog about a celebration

كيفية كتابة مدونة عن احتفال

1 Title: العنوان → Celebrating Labor Day

2 Your name: اسمك → Fady

3 Date: التاريخ → May 1st

4 Introduction: المقدمة → On May 1st, we celebrate Labor Day

5 Body with the details: الموضوع بالتفصيل

- وهو عبارة عن محتوى المدونة بالتفاصيل.

6 Conclusion: الخاتمة

- هي جمل نهاية المحتوى للمدونة.

7 Add pictures: إضافة صورة

- نضيف صورة في نهاية المدونة لنجعلها أكثر إثارة.

1 Read and learn:

اقرأ وتعلم:

1- Title العنوان

Celebrating Labor Day

By Fady

May 1, 2025

On May 1st, we celebrate Labor Day. It is a special day to honor workers and all the hard work they do.

My family and I joined a small event in our neighborhood. We saw workers being thanked for their jobs. I made a colorful card to give to my father and teacher. Everyone enjoyed the celebrations and shared happy moments together.

I had a wonderful time celebrating Labor Day. Everyone should appreciate workers and their efforts every day!



في الأول من مايو، نحتفل بعيد العمال، إنه يوم خاص لتكريم العمال وكل الجهود التي يبذلونها. انضمت أسرتي وأنا إلى فعالية صغيرة في حيّنا. رأينا العمال يشكرون على وظائفهم. صنعت بطاقة ملونة لأقدمها لوالدي ومعلمي. استمتع الجميع بالاحتفال وتقاسموا لحظات سعيدة معاً. لقد قضيت وقتاً رائعاً في الاحتفال بيوم العمال. يجب على الجميع أن يقدروا العمال وجهودهم كل يوم!

2 Read and fill in the missing parts:

اقرأ وأملأ الفراغات الناقصة:

Celebrating Sinai Liberation Day احتفال عيد تحرير سيناء

By + name

Date

On April 25th, we celebrate Sinai Liberation Day. It is a special day to remember when Sinai was freed.

My school held a small celebration in the playground. We sang songs and waved flags. I learned about the brave soldiers who helped free Sinai. Everyone felt proud and happy to celebrate our country.

I had a wonderful time celebrating with my friends and family. Everyone should remember and honor the heroes of our country!



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. On May 1st, we celebrate Labor
a Year **b** Day **c** Month **d** Week
2. We flags in our school.
a sang **b** waved **c** felt **d** made
3. Everyone should the heroes of our country.
a honor **b** wave **c** share **d** give
4. We should workers and their efforts.
a learn **b** make **c** check **d** appreciate

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

hard - free - share - thank - honor

On Labor Day, we celebrate workers. We ① them for their jobs. It's a special day to ② workers and all the ③ work they do. We enjoy this celebration and ④ happy moments.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Our school celebrates Sinai Liberation Day every year. It's a special day to remember when Sinai was freed. The school holds this celebration in the playground. We sing songs and wave flags. Some students wear special clothes. We watch films on TV about the brave soldiers. We feel proud about the brave soldiers who helped free Sinai. We shouldn't forget the heroes of our country.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The celebration holds in the
a library **b** playground **c** village **d** classroom
2. We feel proud of the brave
a soldiers **b** men **c** teachers **d** students

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the text?

4. Who shouldn't we forget on Sinai Liberation Day?

5. What do we watch on TV?

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i made a colorful card for my parents

2. who should we honor on Labor Day

5 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربع جمل عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Celebrating Labor Day

honor - share - workers

Review

on Unit 4



exchange gifts

يتبادل الهدايا



perform music

يؤدي موسيقى



play a game

يمارس لعبة



eat special food

يتناول طعام خاص



socialize with friends

يتواصل اجتماعي مع الأصدقاء



wear special clothes

يرتدي ملابس خاصة



clap

يصفق



take photos

يلتقط صوراً



fireworks

ألعاب نارية



hang shiny ribbons

يعلق شرائط لامعة



candles

شموع



decorate

يزين



cheerful

مبتهج



wrapped the giveaways

يغلف الهدايا



guests

ضيوف



Labor Day

عيد العمال



workers

عمال



hard work

عمل جاد



neighborhood

حي سكني



colorful card

كارت ملون



wave flags

يلوح بالأعلام



honor

يُكرم



heroes

أبطال



brave soldiers

جنود شجعان

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Adjectives الصفات

الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء و تأتي قبلها أو بعد verb to be فعل «يكون» :

- The colorful balloons floated in the air.

لاحظ أن colorful تصف balloon.

فالصفات تصف الأتي فهي تخبرنا ماذا يبدو، يشعر :

1 Describing people: تصف الناس :

tall	طويل	short	قصير	kind	مطووف
friendly	ودود	happy	سعيد		

2 Describing objects: تصف الأشياء :

big	كبير	small	صغير	colorful	ملون
shiny	لامع	soft	ناعم		

3 Describing places: تصف الأماكن :

quiet	هادئ	busy	مزدحم	peaceful	آمن
beautiful	جميل	crowded	مزدحم		

4 Describing feelings/events: تصف المشاعر والأحداث :

exciting	مثير	fun	متعة	amazing	مدهش
wonderful	رائع	boring	ممل		



Pronunciation

Suffix: - Final - s sound in plural نطق اللاحقة (s) في صيغة الجمع

● نستخدم صيغة الجمع للأسماء عندما نتحدث عن أكثر من شخص، حيوان أو شيء.

● نضع (es) أو (s) في نهاية معظم الكلمات في حالة الجمع:

one friend	→	friends	box	→	boxes
one cat	→	cats	watch	→	watches
one book	→	books	glass	→	glasses

● لاحظ أن one تساوي a/an قبل الاسم المفرد.

● وهناك أسماء شاذة تحفظ مثل:

child	→	children	man	→	men
-------	---	----------	-----	---	-----

● تنطق اللاحقة (s) بثلاث أصوات مختلفة حسب الحرف الذي يسبقها:

- ينطق حرف "s" كصوت (s) إذا انتهت الكلمة المفردة بصوت من الأصوات غير المنطوقة مثل:

/p/, /t/, /k/, /f/, /θ/

guest	→	guests	→	/s/	book	→	books	→	/s/
-------	---	--------	---	-----	------	---	-------	---	-----

- ينطق حرف "s" كصوت (z) إذا انتهت الكلمة المفردة بصوت من الأصوات المنطوقة مثل:

/n/, /l/, /m/

ribbon	→	ribbons	→	/z/	candle	→	candles	→	/z/
--------	---	---------	---	-----	--------	---	---------	---	-----

- ينطق حرف "s" كصوت (Iz) عند إضافة (es) للاسم المفرد التي ينتهي بالأصوات الآتية:

/s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/

house	→	houses	→	/Iz/	box	→	boxes	→	/Iz/
-------	---	--------	---	------	-----	---	-------	---	------

● ملاحظات عند إضافة (s) إلى الفعل:

- عندما يكون الفاعل (الاسم) مفرداً، يتم إضافة حرف (s) إلى الفعل (زمن المضارع البسيط):

- The girl **hides** under the table.

- عندما يكون الفاعل (الاسم) جمعاً، لا نضيف حرف (s) إلى الفعل (زمن المضارع البسيط):

- The boys **kick** the ball.



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Family gathering

Last week, we enjoyed the family gathering at home. We sat together, talked and listened to music. We played games. Then, we ate delicious food.

2

Lesson 2

An unforgettable celebration

There was a wonderful celebration in our school playground last week. We decorated the fences with balloons. There was a big cake in the center of the playground. It was an unforgettable celebration.

3

Lesson 3

Your birthday party

I celebrated my birthday party at home yesterday. My father hang the balloons. My mother baked a delicious cake. I put ten candles on it. I received the gifts from my friends.

4

Lesson 4

Celebrating Labor Day

We celebrate Labor Day on May 1st. It's a special day to honor workers and all the hard work they do. We have a wonderful time celebrating Labor Day.

5

Test

An important celebration

Celebrating Sinai Liberation Day is very important. It's a special day to remember when Sinai was freed. I learned about the brave soldiers who helped free Sinai.

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Omar's mother made a big

(pizza - cake - sandwich)

2. Omar wore new

(shorts - hats - clothes)

3. Omar received from his friends.

(balloons - gifts - foods)

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

socialized - fences - celebration - do

Samy: We had a big celebration yesterday.

Adel: What did you ① in the celebration?

Samy: We hang colorful balloons from the ②

Samy: What did you enjoy in the ③

Adel: We sang songs and ④ with our friends.

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Everyone should workers on Labor Day.

a appreciate

b perform

c exchange

2. There were some in the celebration.

a child

b children

c a child

3. We lit up the sky with

a cakes

b fireworks

c clothes

4. The boys and girls for everyone in the party.

a clapping

b claps

c clap

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Yesterday the celebration (is) amazing.
2. The (child) play in the garden.
3. Omar felt (happy) when he lost the pencil case.
4. I (have) a wonderful time last week.

5 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

We enjoy our family gathering every Friday. We go to our grandma's house. There is a big garden around the house. We sit together with our cousins. We play games like hide and seek and chess and also exchange gifts together. We have a fun time all day

A) Write (T) true or (F) false:

1. We enjoy our family gathering every Sunday.
2. We go to our grandma's house.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐

B) Choose the correct answer:

3. We exchange together.
 - a gifts b clothes c balloons
4. There's a big around the house.
 - a fence b tree c book
5. We have a time all day.
 - a boring b fun c bad

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربع جمل عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Amazing party

decorate - balloons - candles - gifts

Test on Unit 4

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Mother's Day is in March.	☐	☐
2. We sit together with our cousins.	☐	☐
3. We hang clothes on the Mother's Day.	☐	☐
4. We buy gifts for our mothers.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- We had a time during the celebration.
a friendly **b** fun **c** angry **d** hard
- Many students photos to remember the celebration.
a lit **b** blew **c** wore **d** took
- The children played games and songs in the celebration.
a sang **b** sings **c** sing **d** singing
- I gifts from my cousins.
a laughed **b** received **c** performed **d** clapped
- There some dishes on the table.
a is **b** has **c** are **d** was
- The dog in the yard every night.
a slept **b** sleep **c** sleeps **d** sleeping

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

wrapped - balloons - prepared - share - decorated

We celebrated my brother's birthday at home. We ① the living room with colorful ② My brother was happy and ③ the giveaways he had bought for his friends because he wanted to ④ his happiness. Then, we sang songs and played games. The party was full of fun.

4 Read the following passage, then answer the question:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Celebrations and birthday parties are amazing. Everyone likes celebrations. We can have fun and enjoy ourselves. We make celebrations to honor the great heroes and people we like. We can hang shiny ribbons and colorful balloons. We take photos on birthday parties. We can also play games. There are many gifts, food and cakes. We can see fireworks in the sky. We have a wonderful day full of joy and laughter.

A) Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d:

- We make celebrations to the great heroes.
 a wrap b light c honor d exchange
- We can hang ribbons and colorful balloons.
 a boring b kind c dark d shiny

B) Answer the following questions:

- What do we take on birthday parties?
- What can we see in the sky?
- How is the day of celebrations?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- My little brother has a (**delicious**) toy car.
- Hisham (**play**) games on his birthday.
- There are five (**candle**) on the cake.
- The flowers in the garden are (**busy**) .

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- what did you bring in the party
- the birthday cake tastes delicious

7 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربع جمل عن:

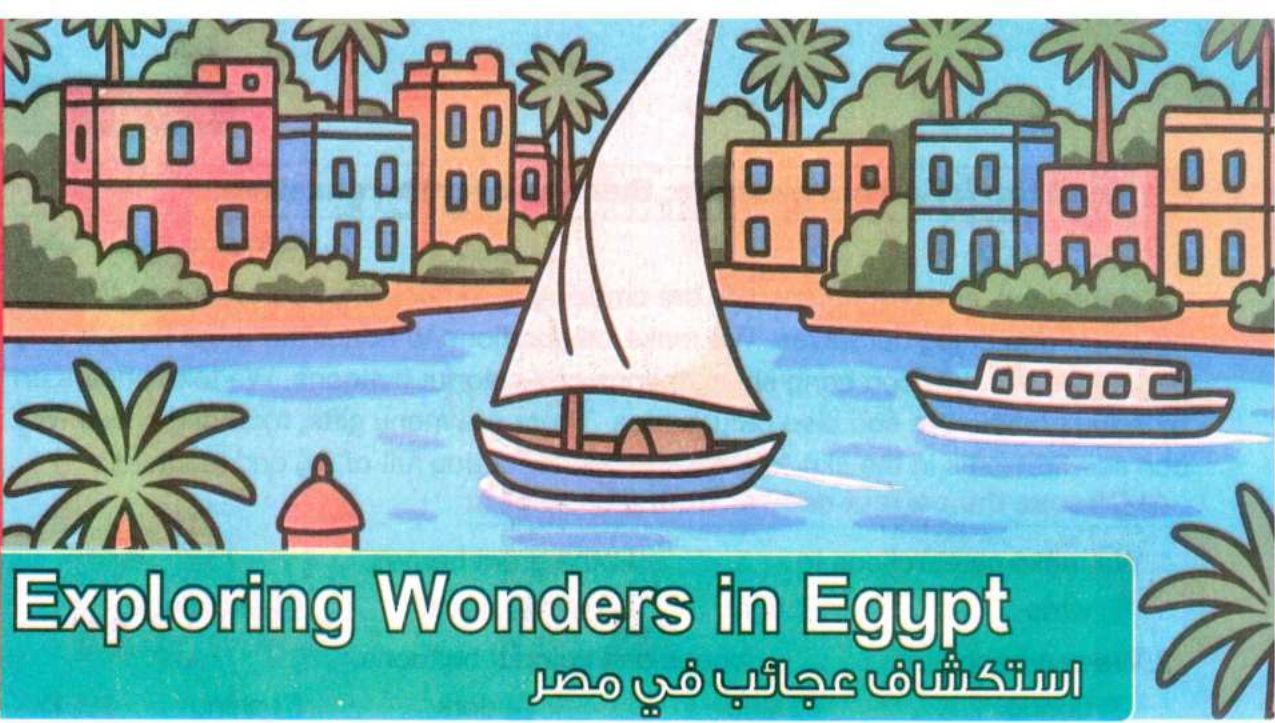
An important celebration

special - freed - soldiers

.....

.....

.....



Exploring Wonders in Egypt

استكشاف عجائب في مصر

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- Describe trips, holidays, and experiences using simple sentences.
يصف الطالب الرحلات، والعطلات والتجارب باستخدام جمل بسيطة.
- Ask and answer questions about places, activities, and local life.
يطرح الطالب الأسئلة والإجابة حول الأماكن والأنشطة والحياة المحلية.
- Give advice using should/shouldn't in short dialogs.
يقدم الطالب النصيحة باستخدام should / shouldn't في حوارات قصيرة.
- Pronounce oi/oy words correctly in speech.
ينطق الطالب الكلمات التي تحتوي علي oi / oy بشكل صحيح في الكلام.

Reading:

- Read short texts about places and identify the main idea.
يقرأ الطالب نصوص قصيرة عن الأماكن وتحديد الفكرة الرئيسية.
- Recognize vocabulary related to trips, holidays, and sightseeing.
يتعرف الطالب علي المفردات المتعلقة بالرحلات والعطلات والمعالم السياحية.
- Identify should/shouldn't in written advice texts.
يحدد الطالب should / shouldn't في نصوص تقديم النصيحة المكتوبة.
- Understand the structure of postcards, including greeting, body, and closing.
يفهم الطالب بنية البطاقات البريدية بما في ذلك التحية، المحتوى والخاتمة.

Listening:

- Listen to short stories and dialogs about Egyptian places.
يستمع الطالب إلي قصص وحوارات قصيرة عن الأماكن المصرية.
- Identify key details such as locations, activities, and landmarks.
يحدد الطالب التفاصيل الرئيسية مثل المواقع والأنشطة والمعالم.
- Understand advice using should/ shouldn't in context.
يفهم الطالب النصيحة باستخدام should / shouldn't في السياق.
- Recognize oi/oy sounds in spoken words.
يتعرف الطالب علي أصوات oi / oy في الكلمات المنطوقة.

Writing:

- Write short sentences or paragraphs about trips or holidays.
يكتب الطالب جمل أو فقرات قصيرة عن الرحلات أو العطلات.
- Compose advice sentences using should/shouldn't.
يألف الطالب جمل لتقديم النصيحة باستخدام should / shouldn't.
- Complete spelling activities with oi/oy words.
يكمل الطالب أنشطة التهجئة لكلمات تحتوي علي oi / oy.
- Write a short postcard including greeting, body, and closing.
يكتب الطالب بطاقة بريدية قصيرة تتضمن التحية، المحتوى والخاتمة.
- Create a mind map about exciting places in Egypt.
ينشأ الطالب خريطة ذهنية عن الأماكن المثيرة في مصر.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المقدرات:



water springs

ينابيع مياه



journey

رحلة



bedouins

البدو



tents

خيام



traditional life

حياة تقليدية



Ouyoun Mousa

عيون موسى



Other words

كلمات أخرى

generations	أجيال	natural wonder	عجبة طبيعية
tourists	السياح	South Sindai	جنوب سيناء
mosque	جامع	journey	رحلة
interesting	شيق	the stars	النجوم
historical site	موقع تاريخي	the desert	الصحراء
quiet	هادي	fresh	نقي
bricks	طوب	heritage	ارث
Moses	سيدنا موسى (عليه السلام)		



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

during their journey	اثناء رحلتهم	for everyone	لجميع
around it	حولها	not only	ليس فقط
but also	ولكن ايضا		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
need	يحتاج
pass down	يُسلم
call	يسمي
follow	يتبع
enjoy	يستمتع
walk	يمشي

Past ماض	
needed	
passed down	
called	
followed	
enjoyed	
walked	

Present مضارع	
sleep	ينام
drink	يشرب
learn	يتعلم

Past ماض	
slept	
drank	
learnt	

Study the following

- 1 Oyoum Mousa, also called Moses Springs, is a beautiful place in South Sinai, Egypt. - عيون موسى، التي تسمى أيضاً ينباع موسى، هي مكان جميل في جنوب سيناء، مصر.
- 2 It has fresh water springs and tall palm trees. - تحتوي على ينباع مياه عذبة وأشجار نخيل طويلة.
- 3 Today, many visitors come to enjoy the clean water and quiet desert around it. - اليوم يأتي العديد من الزوار للاستمتاع بالمياه النظيفة والصحراء الهادئة المحيطة بها.
- 4 Some visitors also meet local bedouins, see the tents and learn about their traditional life. - يلتقي الزوار أيضاً بالبدو المحليين، ويرون خيامهم، ويتعلمون عن حياتهم التقليدية.
- 5 Oyoum Mousa is not only a natural wonder. - عيون موسى ليس مجرد أعجوبة طبيعية.
- 6 But also an important historical site for everyone. - بل هي أيضاً موقع تاريخي مهم للجميع.

Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:



Oyoum Mousa

عيون موسى

Oyoum Mousa, also called Moses Springs, is a beautiful place in South Sinai, Egypt. It has fresh water springs and tall palm trees. Long ago, Moses and the people drank water from these springs during their journey through the desert. Today, many visitors come to enjoy the clean water and the quiet desert around it. You can take photos, walk near the springs, and learn about the interesting history of the place. Some visitors also meet local bedouins, see their tents, and learn about their traditional life. Oyoum Mousa is not only a natural wonder but also an important historical site for everyone.



عيون موسى، التي تسمى أيضاً ينباع موسى، هي مكان جميل في جنوب سيناء، مصر. تحتوي على ينباع مياه عذبة وأشجار نخيل طويلة. منذ زمن بعيد شرب سيدنا موسى والناس الماء من هذه الينابيع خلال رحلتهم في الصحراء. اليوم، يأتي العديد من الزوار للاستمتاع بالمياه النظيفة والصحراء الهادئة المحيطة بها. يمكنك التقاط الصورة والمشي بالقرب من الينابيع، والتعرف على التاريخ المثير للاهتمام للمكان. يلتقي الزوار أيضاً بالبدو المحليين ويرون خيامهم، ويتعلمون عن حياتهم التقليدية. عيون موسى ليست مجرد أعجوبة طبيعية، بل هي أيضاً موقع تاريخي مهم للجميع.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Bedouins are people who live in the
 a journey b village c mosque d desert
- Many animals in desert need clean to drink every day.
 a tents b bedouins c water springs d palm trees
- People in the desert live in
 a cars b bikes c tents d shops
- Oyoun Mousa is called Moses
 a Journey b Site c Springs d Mosque
- Oyoun Mousa has a/an history.
 a fresh b tall c interesting d bad

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

photos - quiet - springs - visitors - stars

Oyoun Mousa is a beautiful place in South Sinai, Egypt. It has fresh water
 1 and tall palm trees. Many 2 come to enjoy the clean
 water and the 3 desert around it. You can take 4, walk near
 the springs and learn about the interesting history of the place.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Tents are kinds of houses in the desert. They are made of colorful cloth. They are cool for desert life. Bedouins live in tents. They can cook delicious food outside the tents. At night the bedouins light fire for heating outside the tents. Many tourists come to the desert to enjoy sleeping in small tents under the stars.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Tents are made of
 a plastic b glass c cloth d paper

Unit 5 Exploring Wonders in Egypt

2. Bedouins live in in the desert.

a tents

b apartments

c buildings

d houses

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What do bedouins light at night?

4. Why do tourists come to the desert?

5. Summarize the text in a sentence.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. who lives near Oyoun Mousa

2. visitors can take photos near the springs

5 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربعة جمل عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Water springs in the desert

fresh - desert - visitors

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



snorkeling

الغطس بأنبوب



scuba diving

الغوص (بجهاز تنفس)



starfish

نجمة البحر



horseback riding

ركوب الخيل



hiking

التنزه سيراً على الأقدام



corals

الشعب المرجانية

Other words كلمات أخرى

mid-year vacation

اجازة نصف العام

wonderful

رائع

definitely

بالتأكيد

holiday

اجازة

Dahab

مدينة دهب

really

بالفعل

crabs

كابوريا

activities

أنشطة

indoors

بالداخل

sunscreen

كريم واقٍ من الشمس

sharp

حاد

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

with my family

مع أسرتي

that sounds fun

ذلك يبدو ممتعاً

go scuba diving

يذهب للغوص

living sea animals

حيوانات بحرية حية

by the beach

يجوار الشاطئ

wear sunscreen

يضع كريم واقٍ من الشمس

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

touch	يلمس
visit	يزور
pick up	يلتقط
climb	يتسلق

Past ماضٍ

touched
visited
picked up
climbed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

spend	يقضي (وقتاً)
see	يرى
tell	يخبر

Past ماضٍ

spent
saw
told

Language in Use

وظائف لغوية

1 should + inf مصدر الفعل ينبغي أن.....

في الأثبات: نستخدم "should" بمعنى (ينبغي أن) لضرورة فعل شيء أو نصيحة.

- You **should go** hiking in the mountains.
- You **should visit** Dahab next vacation.

2 shouldn't + inf مصدر الفعل ينبغي ألا.....

في النفي: نستخدم "shouldn't" بمعنى (ينبغي ألا) لعدم فعل شيء.

- You **shouldn't touch** the starfish.
- You **shouldn't go** hiking now.

3 Should + subject + inf فاعل + مصدر الفعل ؟

في السؤال: نستخدم "should" بمعنى (هل ينبغي.....؟).

- **Should** we go hiking in the mountains?
- Yes, we **should**. (في الأثبات) - No, we **shouldn't**. (في النفي)

Checkup Exercises ✓

1 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- You wear a jacket when it's cold.
☐ a should ☐ b shouldn't ☐ c doesn't ☐ d aren't
- We be late for school.
☐ a doesn't ☐ b isn't ☐ c should ☐ d shouldn't
- A: What I do? B: You should eat healthy food.
☐ a are ☐ b should ☐ c shouldn't ☐ d don't
- You wear comfortable shoes.
☐ a should ☐ b shouldn't ☐ c aren't ☐ d doesn't
- The sea is calm. You go swimming.
☐ a shouldn't ☐ b should ☐ c couldn't ☐ d haven't

2 Rewrite each sentence using shouldn't: SB

1. You eat too many sweets.

اعد كتابة كل جملة باستخدام (shouldn't):

- You shouldn't eat too many sweets.

2. You want to stay healthy.

3. You are late for school every day.

4. You have an important exam tomorrow.

5. You see litter on the playground.

3 Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets:

اقرأ و اكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. We (should to) help your mother.

2. I (shouldn't) do my homework now.

3. They should (sang) loudly.

4. You (shouldn't) keep your school clean.

5. She should (goes) swimming now.

Study the following

1 How was your mid-year vacation?

كيف كانت عطلة منتصف العام؟

2 I spent my holiday in Dahab with my family.

قضيت اجازتي في مدينة دهب مع عائلتي.

3 You should really try it one day!

يجب أن تجربها حقا في يوماً ما!

4 Did you go snorkeling too?

هل ذهبت للغطس أيضاً؟

5 What else did you do?

ماذا فعلت أيضاً؟

6 I should visit Dahab next vacation!

يجب أن أزور دهب في العطلة القادمة.

7 We went hiking in the mountain.

ذهبنا للتمشية في الجبال.

Read the dialog:

اقرأ المحادثة

استمع إلى النص:



A Wonderful Vacation in Dahab عطلة رائعة في مدينة ذهب

Karima : Hi Salma! How was your mid-year vacation?

كريمة: مرحباً يا سلمى! كيف كانت عطلة منتصف العام؟

Salma : It was wonderful! I spent my holiday in Dahab with my family.

سلمى: كانت رائعة! قضيت عطلتي في ذهب مع عائلتي.

Karima : Wow! What did you do there?

كريمة: واو! ماذا فعلت هناك؟

Salma : We went scuba diving and saw many starfish. You should really try it one day!

سلمى: ذهبنا للغوص ورأينا الكثير من نجوم البحر. يجب أن تجربوها حقاً يوماً ما.

Karima : That sounds fun! Did you go snorkeling too?

كريمة: هذا يبدو ممتعاً! هل ذهبت للغسل أيضاً؟

Salma : Yes, and I saw corals. You shouldn't touch them because they are living sea animals.

سلمى: نعم ورأيت الشعاب المرجانية. لا يجب أن تلمسها لأنها حيوانات بحرية حية.

Karima : You're right! What else did you do?

كريمة: أنت محقة! ماذا فعلت أيضاً؟

Salma : We went hiking in the mountains and horseback riding by the beach.

سلمى: ذهبنا للتنزه في الجبال وركوب الخيل بجانب الشاطئ.

Karima : That sounds amazing! I should visit Dahab next vacation!

كريمة: هذا يبدو مذهلاً! يجب أن أزور مدينة ذهب في العطلة القادمة!

Salma : You definitely should!

سلمى: بالتأكيد يجب أن تفعل!



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- You eat healthy food.
☐ a shouldn't ☐ b should ☐ c aren't ☐ d doesn't
- The are living sea animals.
☐ a corals ☐ b guides ☐ c mountains ☐ d generations
- When I went, I climbed up the rocky mountain trail.
☐ a riding ☐ b hiking ☐ c swimming ☐ d diving
- We should Dahab next vacation.
☐ a visited ☐ b visiting ☐ c visits ☐ d visit
- A:** I eat healthy food? **B:** Yes, you should.
☐ a Does ☐ b Have ☐ c Should ☐ d Are
- We went in the sea and saw many colorful fish.
☐ a diving ☐ b riding ☐ c liking ☐ d cycling
- You be careful not to touch the corals.
☐ a should ☐ b shouldn't ☐ c aren't ☐ d doesn't

2 Read the text and answer questions: اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Salma spent her mid-year vacation in Dahab. She went there with her family by bus. She went snorkeling and saw corals. Then, she went hiking in the mountains and horseback riding at the beach. The journey was amazing. She had a great time. She stayed in a hotel near the sea.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Salma went snorkeling and saw
☐ a whales ☐ b dolphins ☐ c corals ☐ d lizards
- Salma went in the mountains.
☐ a hiking ☐ b riding ☐ c snorkeling ☐ d diving

B) Answer the following questions:

- What's the main idea of the passage?

Unit 5 Exploring Wonders in Egypt

4. Where did Salma stay in Dahab?

5. How did Salma go to Dahab?

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We should (visiting) our aunt.

2. A: (Doesn't) I try to do it again? B: Yes, you definitely should.

3. They (shouldn't to) stay up late at night.

4. You shouldn't (drops) trash on the playground.

5. My brother shouldn't (going) to bed late.

6. What should you (does) after school?

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. you shouldn t go snorkeling now.

2. what else should you do

5 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربعة جمل عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A journey to Dahab

mid - year vacation - scuba diving - starfish

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



Corniche

كورنيش



the Suez Canal

قناة السويس



ferry

معدية



seagull

طائر النورس

trip
memorableرحلة قصيرة
لا تنسى

breeze

نسيم



Other words

كلمات أخرى

Port Said
Port Fouad
joyful
sea view
activities
cheerful noiseمدينة بورسعيد
مدينة بورفؤاد
ممتع
منظر البحر
أنشطة
ضجيج مبهجacross
seafood
bridge
ride
tastyعبر
مأكولات بحرية
كوبري
ركوبة
لذيذ / شهي

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

along the corniche
fly aboveبطول الكورنيش
يطير فوقafter that
by the shoreبعد ذلك
يجوار الشاطئ

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

start يبدأ
arrive يصل
walk يمشي
sail يبحر
laugh يضحك

Past ماض

started
arrived
walked
sailed
laughed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

fly يطير
begin يبدأ
take (photos) يلتقط
think يعتقد

Past ماض

flew
began
took
thought

Study the following

- 1 Last weekend, my family and I started our trip Port Said early in the morning.
في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضية بدأت أنا وعائلتي رحلتنا إلى بورسعيد في الصباح الباكر.
- 2 The boys were laughing and taking pictures.
كان الأولاد يضحكون ويلتقطون الصور.
- 3 While seagulls flew above them, making cheerful noise.
بينما كانت طيور النورس تطير فوقهم محدثة أصواتاً مبهجة.
- 4 After that, we took the ferry across the canal to Port Fouad.
بعد ذلك ركبنا العبارة لعبور القناة إلى بورفؤاد.
- 5 The ride was short but exciting.
كانت الرحلة قصيرة لكنها مثيرة.
- 6 Before going home, we ate tasty seafood by the shore.
قبل العودة إلى المنزل، أكلنا مأكولات بحرية لذيذة على الشاطئ.
- 7 It was a joyful and memorable trip.
كانت رحلة ممتعة ولا تُنسى.

Listen and read:

اقرأ النص:

استمع إلى النص:



A Fun Day in Port Said and Port Fouad يوم ممتع في بورسعيد و بورفؤاد

Last weekend, my family and I started our trip to Port Said early in the morning. When we arrived, we walked along the Corniche and watched ships sailing near the point where the Suez Canal begins.

في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضية، بدأت أنا وعائلتي رحلتنا إلى بورسعيد في الصباح الباكر، عندما وصلنا، سرنّا على طول الكورنيش، وشاهدنا السفن وهي تبحر قرب النقطة التي تبدأ عندها قناة السويس.

The boys were laughing and taking pictures while seagulls flew above them, making cheerful noise. After that, we took the ferry across the canal to Port Fouad.

كان الأولاد يضحكون ويلتقطون الصور. بينما كانت طيور النورس تحلق فوقهم محدثة أصواتاً مبهجة. بعد ذلك ركبنا العبارة لعبور القناة إلى بورفؤاد.

The ride was short but very exciting. In Port Fouad, we enjoyed the quiet streets, the cool breeze, and the beautiful sea view.

كانت الرحلة قصيرة لكنها مثيرة. في بورفؤاد استمتعنا بالشوارع الهادئة، والنسيم البارد، ومنظر البحر الجميل.

Before going home, we ate tasty seafood by the shore. It was a joyful and memorable trip.

قبل العودة إلى المنزل، أكلنا مأكولات بحرية لذيذة على الشاطئ. كانت رحلة ممتعة ولا تُنسى.





Pronunciation

استمع إلى المفردات:



كلمات بأصوات الحروف /oi/ و /oy/ Words with /oi/ and /oy/ sounds

الاحرف oi و oy تنطق بنفس الصوت /oi/ كما في كلمة toy.



coin عملة صغيرة



soil تربة



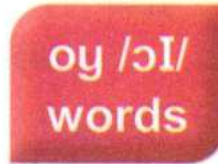
toy لعبة



joy متعة



noise ضوضاء



enjoy يستمتع



oil زيت



point يشير



boil يغلي

join ينضم / يلتحق بـ



boy ولد

لاحظ أن: - تأتي الحروف /oi/ عادة في منتصف الكلمة : coin - point

- تأتي الحروف /oy/ عادة في آخر الكلمة : boy - joy

Checkup Exercises ✓

1 Circle the /oi/ words.

ضع دائرة حول الصوت /oi/.

coin

soil

happy

boy

toy

dog

point

oil

joy

milk

noise

royal

boil

join

cloud

2

Look at the picture and fill in the missing letters: انظر الى الصورة و اكتب الحروف الناقصة:



1 c _ _ n



2 t _ _



3 s _ _



4 j _ y



5 p _ _ nt

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- There are flew above the Suez Canal.
 a pictures b mountains c rides d seagulls
- The ships were near the point where the Suez Canal begins.
 a arriving b enjoying c snorkeling d sailing
- We ate tasty seafood the shore.
 a by b for c under d to
- They took the across the canal to Port Fouad.
 a ferry b seagull c bike d tree
- We enjoy the breeze by the shore.
 a noisy b cool c tall d short

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

point - flying - arrived - begins - follow

We went with my family to a short trip in Port Said. We ① in the morning and walked along the Corniche. We watched the ships sailing near the ② where the Suez Canal ③ Then, we saw seagulls ④ and made cheerful noise.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last mid-year vacation, we went to Alexandria with my family. The trip was amazing. We took the bus early in the morning. We arrived in Alexandria at nine o'clock. We saw the beautiful beach and walked along the Corniche. We watched birds flying above us. We enjoyed the cool breeze and the beautiful sea view. We went to a big restaurant and ate tasty seafood. It was a joyful and memorable trip.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We went to Alexandria by
 a train b car c ferry d bus

2. We watched flying above us.

a seagulls

b birds

c planes

d flies

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did you eat in a big restaurant?

4. What is the main idea of the passage?

5. How was the trip?

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. our trip was very joyful

2. how did they cross the sea

5 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربعة جمل عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Your trip to Port Said

exciting - trip - quiet

★ Discover The Magic of Egypt

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



postcard	بطاقة بريدية	pool	بركة مياه
create	ينشئ	peaceful	هادئ
wonderful time	وقت رائع	full of	مملوء بـ
the Blue Hole	الثقب الأزرق (في دهب)	adventure	مغامرة
clear	صافي	wish	يتمنى / أمنية
perfect	مثالي	invite	يدعو

Other words كلمات أخرى

moment	لحظة	colorful fish	سمك ملون
full name	الاسم بالكامل	amazing	مذهل

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

along the corniche	بطول الكورنيش	after that	بعد ذلك
fly above	يطير فوق	by the shore	يجوار الشاطئ

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	
spot	يكشف
look	يبدو
wish	يتمنى

Past ماض

spotted
looked
wished

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
have	عنده / يمتلك
make	يصنع / يجعل

Past ماض

had
made

Study the following

1 I had a wonderful time at the Blue Hole.

- قضينا وقتا رائعا في منطقة الثقب الأزرق في دهب.

2 The water is very clear and perfect for snorkeling.

- الماء صافٍ جدا ومثالي للغطس.

3 I saw many colorful fish and beautiful corals.

- رأيت الكثير من الأسماك الملونة والشعاب المرجانية الجميلة.

4 I even spotted a big starfish!

- حتى أنني رصدت نجمة بحر كبيرة!

5 I enjoyed every moment here!

- استمتعت بكل لحظة هنا.

Read and learn:

اقرأ وتعلم:

Hello from Dahab!

I had a wonderful time at the Blue Hole. The water is very clear and perfect for snorkeling. I saw many colorful fish and beautiful corals. The mountains around the pools make the place look amazing. I even spotted a big starfish! You should visit the "Blue Hole" because it is fun, peaceful, and full of adventure. I enjoyed every moment here! Wish you were here! Your friend,
Hany

مرحبا من دهب

قضيت وقتا رائعا في منطقة الثقب الأزرق. الماء صافٍ جدا ومثالي للغطس. رأيت الكثير من الأسماك الملونة والشعاب المرجانية الجميلة. الجبال المحيطة بالبرك تجعل المكان يبدو مذهلا. حتى أنني رصدت نجمة بحر كبيرة! يجب أن تزور "الثقب الأزرق" لأنها ممتعة وهادئة ومليئة بالمغامرات. استمتعت لكل لحظة هنا. أتمنى لو كنت هنا! صديقك هاني.



Full Name: Mostafa Ahmed

Country: Cairo, Egypt.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We had a wonderful time at the Blue
 a Shop b Hole c Square d Place
- In Dahab the water is clear and for snorkeling.
 a perfect b sharp c historical d nasty
- I to come to Dahab.
 a see b wish c visit d make
- We our friends to come to Dahab soon.
 a do b arrive c walk d invite

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

adventure - springs - wonderful - history - invite

I create a postcard about my trip to Oyoum Mousa. I wrote the postcard to my friend, Yasser to ① him to visit this amazing place. I had a ② time here. There are water ③ I took photos and walk near the springs and learn about the interesting ④ of the place.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- It's hot. We should (**wore**) sunscreen.
- You should (**visiting**) the Blue Hole in Dahab.
- I should (**to create**) a postcard about my trip.
- They (**should to**) go hiking in the mountains.
- We (**shouldn't**) remember the history of Egypt.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- i had a wonderful time in Dahab
- what did you enjoy in your trip

Review

on Unit 5



water springs

يتابع مياه



journey

رحلة



bedouins

البدو



tents

خيام



traditional life

حياة تقليدية



starfish

نجمة البحر



Oyoun Mousa

عيون موسى



snorkeling

القوص



scuba diving

الغطس بالأنابيب



the Suez Canal

قناة السويس



horseback riding

ركوب الخيل



hiking

التنزه سيرًا علي الأقدام



Corniche

كورنيش



ferry

معدية



corals

الشعب المرجانية

Language in Use

وظائف لغوية

1 should + inf مصدر الفعل ينبغي أن

● في الأثبات: نستخدم "should" بمعنى (ينبغي أن) لضرورة فعل شئ أو نصيحة.

- You **should** go hiking in the mountains.

2 shouldn't + inf مصدر الفعل ينبغي ألا

● في النفي: نستخدم "shouldn't" بمعنى (ينبغي ألا) لعدم فعل شئ.

- You **shouldn't** touch the starfish.

- You **shouldn't** go hiking now.

3 Should + subject + inf قاعل مصدر الفعل ؟

● في السؤال: نستخدم "should" بمعنى (هل ينبغي؟).

- **Should** we go hiking in the mountains?

- Yes, we **should**. (في الأثبات) - No, we **shouldn't**. (في النفي)

 Pronunciation

Words with /oi/ and /oy/ sounds /oy/ و /oi/ كلمات باصوات الحروف

● الحروف oi و oy تُنطق بنفس الصوت /ɔɪ/ كما في كلمة **toy**.



coin عملة صغيرة



soil تربة



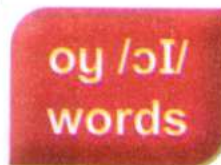
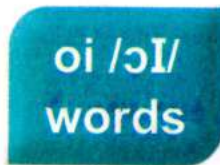
toy لعبة



joy متعة



noise ضوضاء



enjoy يستمتع



oil زيت



point يشير



boil يغلي



boy ولد



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Water springs in the desert

There are water springs in the desert. These springs have fresh water. Many visitors in the desert drink from these springs and enjoy the clean water and the quiet desert around it.

2

Lesson 2

A journey to Dahab

I spent my holiday in Dahab with my family. I went scuba diving and saw many starfish. Then , we went snorkeling and saw corals. After that, we went hiking in the mountains. It was amazing.

3

Lesson 3

Your trip to Port Said

I went to a trip to Port Said. I was happy and excited. We walked along the Corniche, and watched the ships sailing. We took a ferry to cross the Canal to Port Fouad and enjoyed the quiet streets and the cool breeze.

4

Al-Azhar test

Your mid-year vacation

I went to Port Said in the mid-year vacation. I spent a nice time there. I took the ferry to Port Fouad. I enjoyed the fresh breeze. The streets were clean.

5

Test - Units 5

Oyoun Mousa

Oyoun Mousa is a beautiful place in South Sinai, Egypt. It has fresh water springs. Many visitors come to enjoy drinking from these fresh springs. Oyoun Mousa is also an important and historical site for everyone.

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. We visited Oyoum Mousa last (Friday - vacation - month)
2. We saw fresh springs. (water - pool - oil)
3. Moses and the people drank water from springs in the (oasis - desert - mosque)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

visit - shore - snorkeling - postcard

Hoda: Welcome to you in Dahab.

Mona: Thanks for your ① to invite me.

Hoda: What places do you want to ②?

Mona: I like going to the ③

Hoda: What would you like to do at the shore?

Mona: I'd like to go ④ and see corals.

C- Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We visit the wonderful places in Egypt.

a should

b do

c are

d have

2. I had an amazing trip the shore.

a under

b for

c by

d between

3. Should I pictures of the corals?

a taking

b took

c take

d takes

4. I had a wonderful in Dahab.

a time

b canal

c noise

d bridge

4 Read and correct the underlined word in brackets:

اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط بين الأقواس:

1. We should (listens) to our teachers.
2. You (shouldn't to) share password online.
3. (Are) we go outside? Yes, you should.
4. They shouldn't (picked) up flowers.

D- Vocabulary and Structures

5 Read the following passage, then answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

I had a fun day in Port Said. It was an amazing trip. I walked along the Corniche. Then, I rode a ferry to cross the Canal to Port Fouad. The ride was short, but very exciting. After that I had tasty seafood by the shore and enjoyed the cool .

A) Write true (T) or false (F) :

	T	F
1. The trip was amazing.	☐	☐
2. We enjoyed the hot breeze.	☐	☐

B) Choose the correct answer:

3. I walked along the
 a bridge b corniche c mountain d fence
4. I rode the ferry to the canal to Port Fouad.
 a cross b watch c play d meet
5. I had tasty seafood
 a in a restaurant b by the shore c on the ferry d on the ship

E- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية قصيرة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Your mid-year vacation

Port Said - ferry - breeze - streets

Test on Unit 5

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Tarek had a wonderful weekend in Port Said.	☐	☐
2. Tarek went scuba diving and saw many corals.	☐	☐
3. They went hiking in the mountains.	☐	☐
4. They went horseback riding by the river.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- We rode the to cross the river.
 a ferry b bike c flower d spring
- We enjoyed the cool and the sea view.
 a breeze b tourist c noise d tent
- You should scuba diving in Dahab.
 a going b went c goes d go
- We throw trash on the ground.
 a should b shouldn't c are d did
- You shouldn't a hat on a sunny day.
 a forget b forgot c forgets d forgetting
- We saw ships near the Suez Canal.
 a flying b fishing c sailing d laughing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

quiet - ferry - along - tasty - ride

We went on a trip to Port Said. It's famous for its beaches. We walked
 1 the Corniche. We rode the 2 across the canal to Port
 Fouad. Then, we enjoyed the 3 streets and the cool breeze. We ate
 4 seafood by the shore.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Marsa Alam is an amazing town in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It is the best place we can spend our vacation. Tourists like visiting this town to go scuba diving and snorkeling. They can see a lot of starfish and corals. We can see a beautiful sea view and enjoy the cool breeze. It's a joyful and memorable journey for everyone to go in Marsa Alam.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "vacation" means
 a holiday b game c trip d port
- We can see the sea view and enjoy the
 a spring b breeze c ship d starfish

B. Answer the following questions:

- What's the main idea of the passage?
- Why do tourists like visiting Marsa Alam?
- What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Hisham (should) run in the classroom.
- What should you (doing) at home?
- I (shouldn't to) touch starfish.
- You shouldn't (are) late for school.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- there are exciting places in Egypt
- what did the family enjoy in Dahab

7 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربعة جمل عن:

مجاها عنه اخر الوحدة

Oyoun Mousa

place - springs - site

.....

.....

.....

.....



The Lost Kite

الطائرة الورقية المفقودة

Learning Outcomes

Speaking: التحدث

- Retell a story using key words.

يعيد الطالب سرد القصة باستخدام الكلمات المفتاحية.

- Describe characters' feelings and actions.
- Discuss the problem, solution, and moral with others.

يصف الطالب مشاعر الشخصيات وأفعالهم.

يناقش الطالب المشكلة والحل، والعبرة مع الآخرين.

Listening: الاستماع

- Answer questions about characters, events, and feelings.

يجيب الطالب عن الأسئلة حول الشخصيات والأحداث والمشاعر.

- Retell parts of the story after listening.
- Follow simple directions mentioned in the story.

يعيد الطالب سرد أجزاء من القصة بعد الاستماع إليها.

يتبع الطالب التعليمات البسيطة من القصة.

Reading: القراءة

- Identify characters, setting, and main events.

يتعرف الطالب على الشخصيات، والمكان، والأحداث الرئيسية.

- Recognize the problem and solution.
- Understand the story's moral or lesson.

يتعرف الطالب على المشكلة والحل.

يفهم الطالب الدرس الأخلاقي من القصة.

Writing: الكتابة

- Write short sentences or paragraphs about characters, setting, or events.

يكتب الطالب جملًا أو فقرات قصيرة عن الشخصيات، أو المكان، أو الأحداث.

- Describe the problem and solution.
- Explain the story's moral using key vocabulary.

يصف الطالب المشكلة والحل.

يشرح الطالب الدرس الأخلاقي من القصة باستخدام المفردات الأساسية.

Characters of the story

شخصيات القصة



استمع إلى المفردات:



Omar

عمر



Sami

سامي

Story Vocabulary

كلمات القصة



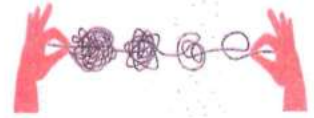
dates

بلح



field

حقل



unrolled the string

يفك الخيط



drifted

انجرف (طار مع الرياح)



bridge

كوبري



mud-brick building

مبنى من الطوب الطيني

Vocabulary

الكلمات



quiet	هادئ	kindness	العطف
full of	مليء بـ	danced	رقصت
sway gently	تتمايل برفق	owned	امتلكه
breeze	النسيم	warning	إنذار
especially	خصوصاً	rushed across	هبت عبر
basket	سلة	hold	يمسك
pick	يقطف / يلتقط	the string	الخيط
high	مرتفع	landed	هبطت
reach	يصل	whispered	همست
carefully	بحرص	faded	باهتة
vines	النباتات المتسلقة	hugged	عانق

Story Elements

عناصر القصة



Title	العنوان	The name of the story	اسم القصة
Setting	المكان	Where and when the story takes place	أين ومتى تحدث القصة
Characters	الشخصيات	People in the story	الأشخاص في القصة
Plot/Problem	الحبكة أو المشكلة	What happens in the story - the sequence of events from beginning to end	ما يحدث في القصة وتسلسل الأحداث من البداية إلى النهاية
Solution	الحل	What happens to fix or solve the problem	ما يحدث لإصلاح أو حل المشكلة
Moral	الدرس الأخلاقي	The lesson or message the story teaches	الدرس المستفاد أو الرسالة التي تعلمها القصة

1

استمع إلى النص:



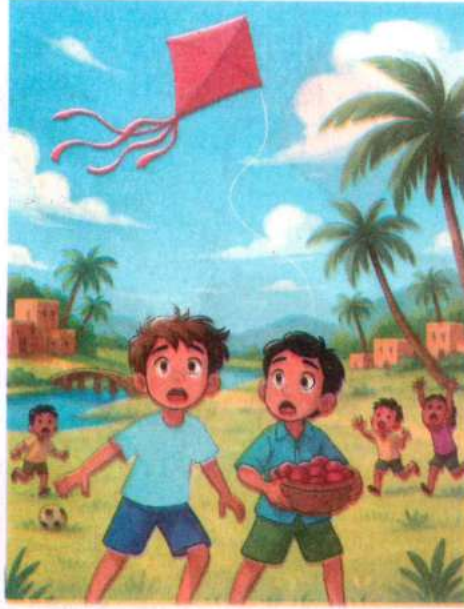
Omar lived in a quiet **village**⁽¹⁾ by a wide **river**⁽²⁾. The village was small, but it was full of life. Children played in the dusty streets, women carried baskets to the market, and tall **palm trees**⁽³⁾ swayed gently in the breeze. Omar loved his home, especially the open **field**⁽⁴⁾ near the edge of the village.

One bright and **sunny**⁽⁵⁾ afternoon, Omar's best friend Sami ran to meet him. Sami carried a new red **kite**⁽⁶⁾, and Omar held a basket of sweet dates that his father had picked that morning. "We can eat these when we get tired," Omar said with a smile. Sami laughed, "First, let's see how high my kite can fly!"

يعيش عمر في قرية هادئة بجانب نهر واسع. كانت القرية صغيرة، لكنها مليئة بالحياة. كان الأطفال يلعبون في الشوارع الترابية، والنساء يحملن سلالاً إلى السوق. وكانت أشجار النخيل الطويلة تتمايل برفق في النسيم. أحب عمر منزله، وخصوصاً الحقل المفتوح قرب طرف القرية. في ظهيرة مشمسة وساطعة، ركض صديقه المقرب سامي لمقابلته. كان سامي يحمل طائرة ورقية حمراء جديدة، وحمل عمر سلة من التمر الحلو الذي قطفه والده في ذلك الصباح. قال عمر بابتسامة: "يمكننا أن نأكل هذا عندما نتعب". فضحك سامي وقال: "أولاً دعنا نرى إلى أي ارتفاع يمكن أن تطير طائرتي".

1- village	قرية	2- river	نهر	3- palm trees	أشجار النخيل
4- field	حقل	5- sunny	مشممس	6- kite	طائرة ورقية

2



When they reached the field, the boys noticed other kids playing **nearby**⁽¹⁾. Some were chasing a ball, others were climbing trees, but everyone stopped to watch Sami's bright kite. Sami carefully **unrolled the string**⁽²⁾, and the kite began to **rise**⁽³⁾.

"Look, Omar!" he shouted. "It's flying higher than the palm trees!" The red kite danced across the blue sky, moving down with the wind. The children clapped and cheered. Sami felt proud-his kite was the most beautiful thing he had ever owned.

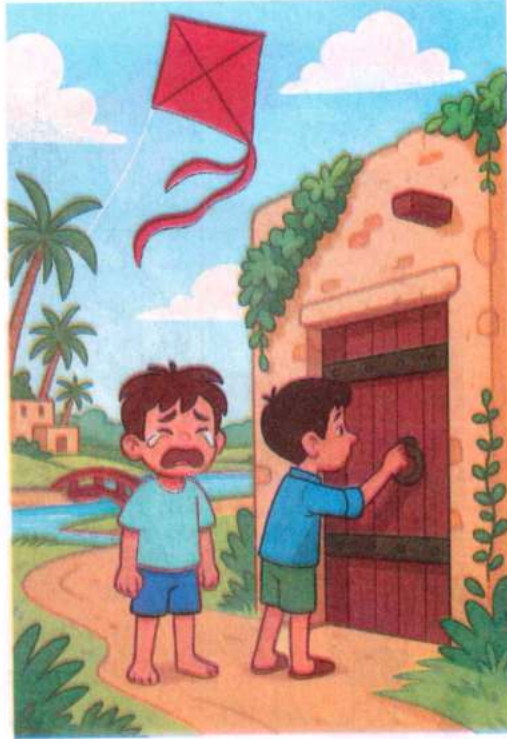
But then, without warning, a strong wind rushed across the field. Sami tried to hold the string tightly, but it **slipped**⁽⁴⁾ through his fingers. "No! Come back!" he cried. The kite flew higher and higher until it **drifted**⁽⁵⁾ across the river.

عندما وصل الأولاد إلى الحقل، لاحظوا أطفالاً آخرين يلعبون بالقرب منهم. كان بعضهم يطارِد كرة، وآخرون يتسلقون الأشجار، لكن الجميع توقفوا لمشاهدة طائرة سامي الورقية الملونة الزاهية. قام سامي بفك الخيط بعناية، وبدأت الطائرة ترتفع في السماء. صاح سامي: "انظر يا عمر! إنها تطير أعلى من أشجار النخيل!" كانت الطائرة الحمراء ترقص في السماء الزرقاء، تتحرك مع الريح. صفق الأطفال وابتهجوا، شعر سامي بالفخر. كانت طائرته أجمل شيء امتلكه في حياته.

ولكن دون أي إنذار، هبت ريح قوية عبر الحقل. حاول سامي أن يمسك بالخيط بإحكام، لكنه انزلق من بين أصابعه. صرخ وقال: "لا! عودي" لكن الطائرة الورقية ارتفعت إلى أعلى وأعلى حتى انجرفت عبر النهر.

1- nearby	بالقرب من	2- unrolled the string	يفك الخيط
3- rise	ترتفع	4- slipped	انزلق
		5- drifted	انجرفت

3



The kite finally landed on the roof of an old **mud-brick building**⁽¹⁾ across the river. Sami's heart sank. "Oh no," he whispered, **tears**⁽²⁾ forming in his eyes. "I'll never get it back."

Omar put a hand on his friend's shoulder. "Don't **give up**⁽³⁾, Sami. Let's try. Maybe someone in that house can help us."

The two boys walked along the dusty road, crossed the small wooden **bridge**⁽⁴⁾ over the river, and stopped in front of the old house. Its walls were faded, and vines climbed around the windows. Sami felt nervous, but Omar knocked gently on the wooden door.

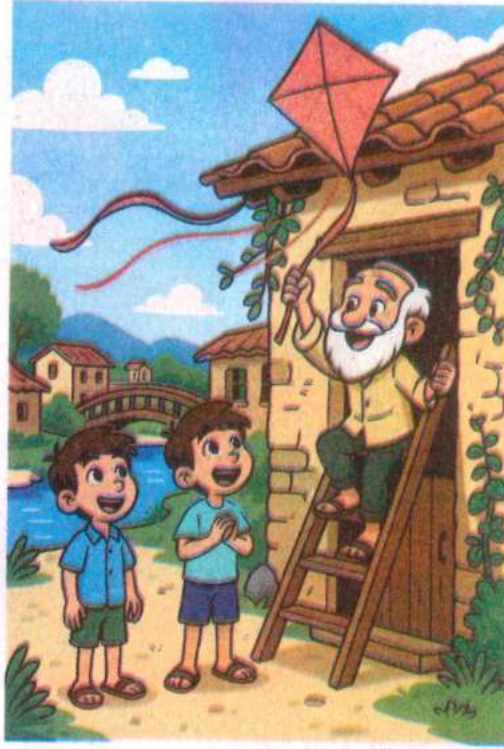
هبطت الطائرة الورقية أخيراً على سطح مبنى قديم من الطوب الطيني على الضفة الأخرى من النهر. شعر سامي بأنقباض في قلبه: همس قائلاً "يا إلهي"، بينما بدأت الدموع تتكون في عينيه، "لن استعيدها أبداً."

وضع عمر يده على كتف صديقه، وقال: "لا تستسلم يا سامي، لنحاول، ربما يمكن لشخص ما في ذلك المنزل مساعدتنا."

مشى الأولاد على طول الطريق الترابي، وعبرا الجسر الخشبي الصغير فوق النهر، وتوقفا أمام المنزل القديم. كانت جدرانه باهتة، و النباتات المتسلقة ملتفة حول النوافذ. شعر سامي بالتوتر، لكن عمر طرق الباب الخشبي برفق.

1- mud-brick building	مبنى من الطوب الطيني	2- tears	دموع
3- give up	يستسلم	4- slipped	انزلق
		5- bridge	كوبري

4



After a moment, the door creaked open. An **old man**⁽¹⁾ with kind eyes and a **white beard**⁽²⁾ appeared. "Hello!" he greeted warmly. "What brings you here?" Sami stepped forward shyly. "My kite... it flew away and landed on your roof. Could you help us, please?"

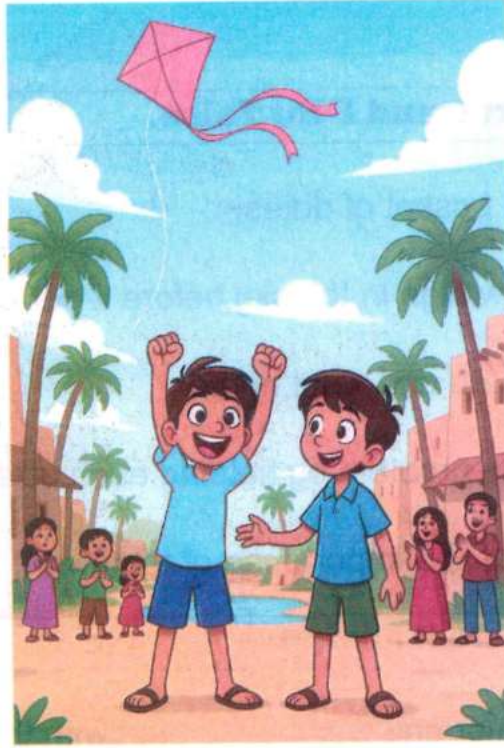
The old man **chuckled**⁽³⁾. "Ah, I saw it! A very fine kite indeed." He **fetches**⁽⁴⁾ a small ladder and slowly climbed up. The boys watched **anxiously**⁽⁵⁾ as he reached out and untangled the kite from the tiles. Finally, he climbed down carefully and placed the kite back into Sami's hands. "Here you are, young man," he said with a smile. "Take care to hold it **tighter**⁽⁶⁾ next time."

بعد لحظة، انفتح الباب بصريير. ظهر رجل عجوز ذو عينيّن طبيّتين ولحية بيضاء، "وحياهما بصرارة أهلاً". ما الذي أتى بكما إلى هنا؟ تقدّم سامي للأمام بخجل وقال، "طائرتي الورقية طارت بعيداً وهبطت على سطح منزلك، هل يمكنك مساعدتنا؟ من فضلك؟"

ضحك الرجل العجوز "أه، لقد رأيته! طائرة ورقية جميلة بالفعل!" أحضر العجوز سلماً صغيراً وصعد ببطء. راقب الأولاد بقلق وهو يمد يده ويفك تشابك الطائرة الورقية من القرميد (بلاط المحجر)، وأخيراً نزل بحذر ووضع الطائرة الورقية مرة أخرى في يدي سامي. "تفضل أيها الفتى؟" قال بابتسامة، "أحرص على الإمساك بها بإحكام أكثر في المرة القادمة."

1- old man	رجل عجوز	2- white beard	لحية بيضاء	3- chuckled	ضحك
4- fetched	أحضر	5- anxiously	بقلق	6- tighter	بإحكام

5



Sami hugged his kite tightly. "Thank you, sir! You saved my day," he said, his face **glowing**⁽¹⁾ with joy. Omar added, "We will always remember your kindness."

The old man nodded. "Kindness makes the world brighter, just like your red kite in the sky."

The boys waved goodbye and ran back to the field. This time, Sami held the string with both hands while Omar stood beside him, ready to help. The kite rose once again, **soaring**⁽²⁾ high above the village. Sami and Omar laughed as it danced against the blue sky, happy that their **adventure**⁽³⁾ had a wonderful ending.

عانق سامي طائرة الورقية بإحكام وقال ووجهه مشرق بالفرح "شكراً لك يا سيدي!" لقد أنقذت يومي، أضاف عمر: "سنذكر لطفك دائماً."

أوماً (هز رأسه) الرجل العجوز، "الطف يجعل العالم أكثر إشراقاً، تماماً مثل طائرتك الورقية الحمراء في السماء."

لوح الصبيان وداعاً، وركضا عائدين إلى الحقل. هذه المرة، أمسك سامي الخيط بكلتا يديه بينما وقف عمر بجانبه، مستعداً للمساعدة. ارتفعت الطائرة الورقية مرة أخرى، محلقة عالياً فوق القرية. ضحك سامي وعمر وهي ترقص في السماء الزرقاء، سعيدين لأن مغامرتهم كان لها نهاية رائعة.

1- glowing

يشرق

2- soaring

ترتفع

3- adventure

مغامرة

★ Exercises

1 Write T for True and F for False.

اكتب صح أم خطأ:

1. Sami carried a basket of dates. ☒
2. Omar's kite flew high in the sky before it got stuck. ☐
3. The boys gave up and went home. ☐
4. They solved the problem by helping each other. ☐
5. The story shows the importance of teamwork. ☐

2 Choose the correct answer

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Where did Omar and Sami go to play with the kite?
 - a in the market
 - b in the open field near the village**
 - c on the riverbank
 - d on the roof of a house
2. How did the children in the village react when Sami's kite flew?
 - a they ignored it
 - b they clapped and cheered
 - c they ran away
 - d they asked for the kite
3. What problem did the boys face?
 - a their basket of dates fell into the river.
 - b their kite got landed on a roof.
 - c they lost their way home.
 - d a storm broke their kite.

4. How did the boys solve their problem?

- a they built a new kite.
- b they climbed the tree together and freed the kite.
- c they asked a neighbor for help.
- d they decided to play another game.

5. What lesson do the boys learn?

- a sharing is not important.
- b working together helps solve problems.
- c it's better to play alone.
- d kites are too difficult to play with

3 Put these events in order by writing the number in front of the sentence:

ضع الأحداث في الترتيب الصحيح بكتابة الرقم أمام الجملة

a Sami's kite landed on the roof.

b Omar and Sami went to the old man's house.

c The kite flew high in the sky.

d The old man returned the kite.

1

4 Think and answer

فكر وأجب:

1. Why did the kite fly across the river?

Because a strong wind rushed and the kite drifted across the river.

2. Why did the boys ask the old man for help?

3. How did Sami's feelings change from losing the kite to getting it back?

Losing the kite

Getting the kite back

5 Read again and fill in the blanks

اقرأ مرة أخرى واملأ الفراغات:

1. Omar carried a basket of dates.
2. The boys lived in a small house near the river.
3. The kite got stuck in a tree.
4. The boys had a fight, but they worked together.
5. Finally, they found a way.

6 Word search:

ايحث عن الكلمة :

M	K	V	Z	C	M	Q	K	U	N	R	R	L	K
B	R	I	D	G	E	D	T	A	D	Y	I	P	I
U	D	F	C	F	O	A	V	R	V	K	V	O	T
P	D	I	P	I	Z	I	S	G	Y	G	E	N	E
E	B	E	V	T	W	D	B	Q	B	R	R	Y	U
R	X	L	I	R	I	A	J	R	I	J	E	D	Q
G	U	D	L	E	I	C	D	A	T	E	S	R	X
R	S	X	L	E	R	P	L	U	L	J	I	I	I
B	T	A	A	S	B	A	P	B	C	L	P	F	X
H	R	B	G	X	W	O	W	I	N	D	Y	T	G
S	I	O	E	G	D	H	J	E	G	E	E	E	P
R	N	H	S	D	I	D	W	V	B	E	J	D	K
T	G	K	N	U	W	S	W	Z	X	T	L	R	A
K	Y	Y	B	K	Q	P	G	L	N	J	K	Q	X

RIVER
TREES
KITE
DATES
STRING
DRIFTED
FIELD
BRIDGE
WIND
VILLAGE

7 Use each word in your own sentence:

ضع كل كلمة في جملة من عندك

1. village: Omar lived in a quiet village.
2. river :
3. kindness:
4. drifted:
5. dates:

Review 2

on units 4 & 5

Objectives of Review 2

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 4 - 5.

"يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٤ إلى ٥."

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 4 - 5.

"يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ٤ إلى ٥."

- To evaluate progress in Units 4 -5.

"يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ في استيعاب الوحدات من ٤ إلى ٥."

★ Units 4 & 5

Unit 4

Let's Celebrate

هيا نحتفل



exchange gifts

يتبادل الهدايا



perform music

يؤدي موسيقى



play a game

يمارس لعبة



eat special food

يتناول طعام خاص



socialize with friends

يتواصل اجتماعي مع الأصدقاء



wear special clothes

يرتدي ملابس خاصة



clap

يصفق



take photos

يلتقط صوراً



fireworks

ألعاب نارية



hang shiny ribbons

يعلق شرائط لامعة



candles

شموع



decorate

يزين



cheerful

مبتهج



wrapped the giveaways

يغلف الهدايا



guests

ضيوف



Labor Day

عيد العمال



workers

عمال



hard work

عمل جاد



neighborhood

حي سكني



colorful card

كارت ملون



wave flags

يلوح بالأعلام



honor

يُكرم



heroes

أبطال



brave soldiers

جنود شجعان

Sinaï

سيناء

happy moments

لحظات سعيدة

free

حر

appreciate

يقدر

efforts

مجهودات

proud

فخور

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Adjectives الصفات

الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء وتأتي قبلها أو بعد verb to be فعل «يكون»:

- The colorful balloons floated in the air.

لاحظ أن colorful تصف balloon.

فالصفات تصف الأتي فهي تخبرنا ماذا يبدو، يشعر:

1 Describing people: تصف الناس

tall	طويل	short	قصير	kind	عطوف
friendly	ودود	happy	سعيد		

2 Describing objects: تصف الأشياء

big	كبير	small	صغير	colorful	ملون
shiny	لامع	soft	ناعم		

3 Describing places: تصف الأماكن

quiet	هادئ	busy	مزدحم	peaceful	آمن
beautiful	جميل	crowded	مزدحم		

4 Describing feelings/events: تصف المشاعر والأحداث

exciting	مثير	fun	متعة	amazing	مدهش
wonderful	رائع	boring	ممل		

Pronunciation

نطق اللاحقة (s) في صيغة الجمع Suffix. - Final - s sound in plural

● نستخدم صيغة الجمع للأسماء عندما نتحدث عن أكثر من شخص، حيوان أو شيء.

● نضع (es) أو (s) في نهاية معظم الكلمات في حالة الجمع:

one friend	→	friends	box	→	boxes
one cat	→	cats	watch	→	watches
one book	→	books	glass	→	glasses

● لاحظ أن one تساوي a/an قبل الاسم المفرد.

● وهناك أسماء شاذة تحفظ مثل:

child	→	children	man	→	men
-------	---	----------	-----	---	-----

● تنطق اللاحقة (s) بثلاث أصوات مختلفة حسب الحرف الذي يسبقها:

- ينطق حرف "s" كصوت (s) إذا انتهت الكلمة المفردة بصوت من الأصوات غير المنطوقة مثل:

/p/, /t/, /k/, /f/, /θ/

guest	→	guests	→	/s/	book	→	books	→	/s/
-------	---	--------	---	-----	------	---	-------	---	-----

- ينطق حرف "s" كصوت (z) إذا انتهت الكلمة المفردة بصوت من الأصوات المنطوقة مثل:

/n/, /l/, /m/

ribbon	→	ribbons	→	/z/	candle	→	candles	→	/z/
--------	---	---------	---	-----	--------	---	---------	---	-----

- ينطق حرف "s" كصوت (ɪz) عند إضافة (es) للاسم المفرد التي ينتهي بالأصوات الآتية:

/s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/

house	→	houses	→	/ɪz/	box	→	boxes	→	/ɪz/
-------	---	--------	---	------	-----	---	-------	---	------

● ملاحظات عند إضافة (s) إلى الفعل:

- عندما يكون الفاعل (الاسم) مفرداً، يتم إضافة حرف (s) إلى الفعل (زمن المضارع البسيط):

- The girl **hides** under the table.

- عندما يكون الفاعل (الاسم) جمعاً، لا نضيف حرف (s) إلى الفعل (زمن المضارع البسيط):

- The boys **kick** the ball.

Unit 5

Exploring Wonders in Egypt استكشاف عجائب في مصر



water springs

ينابيع مياه



journey

رحلة



bedouins

البدو



tents

خيام



traditional life

حياة تقليدية



starfish

نجمة البحر



Oyoun Mousa

عيون موسى



snorkeling

الغوص



scuba diving

الغطس بالأنابيب



the Suez Canal

قناة السويس



ركوب الخيل



hiking

التنزه سيراً على الأقدام



Corniche

كورنيش



ferry

معدية



corals

الشعب المرجانية

postcard

create

wonderful time

the Blue Hole

clear

perfect

بطاقة بريدية

ينشئ

وقت رائع

الثقب الأزرق (في دهب)

صافى

مثالى

pool

peaceful

full of

adventure

wish

invite

بركة مياه

هادئ

مملوء بـ

مغامرة

يتمنى / أمنية

يدعو

Language in Use

وظائف لغوية

1 should + inf مصدر الفعل ينبغي أن

⊙ هي الأثبات، نستخدم "should" بمعنى (ينبغي أن) لضرورة فعل شيء أو نصيحة.

- You **should** go hiking in the mountains.

2 shouldn't + inf مصدر الفعل ينبغي ألا

⊙ هي النفي: نستخدم "shouldn't" بمعنى (ينبغي ألا) لعدم فعل شيء.

- You **shouldn't** touch the starfish.

- You **shouldn't** go hiking now.

3 Should + subject + inf فاعل + مصدر الفعل ؟

⊙ هي السؤال: نستخدم "should" بمعنى (هل ينبغي؟).

- **Should** we go hiking in the mountains?

- Yes, we **should**. (في الأثبات) - No, we **shouldn't**. (في النفي)

Pronunciation

كلمات بأصوات الحروف /oi/ و /oy/ Words with /oi/ and /oy/ sounds

⊙ الحروف **oi** و **oy** تُنطق بنفس الصوت /ɔɪ/ كما في كلمة **toy**.



coin عملة صغيرة



soil تربة



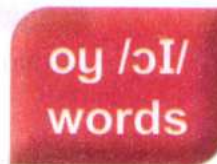
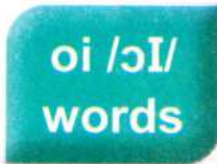
toy لعبة



joy متعة



noise ضوضاء



enjoy يستمتع



oil زيت



point يشير



boil يغلي



boy ولد

Read and answer:

أقرأ واجب:

Our Class Wins the Best Decoration! يفوز فصلنا بأفضل زينة

Last Thursday, our class won the best decoration competition! We worked hard all week to make our classroom look colorful and cheerful. We used balloons, ribbons, and posters with drawings and messages. Everyone helped clean, arrange the tables, and hang the decorations. Some students drew pictures, while others wrote signs to make the room lively. The judges walked around and smiled at our work. When they announced that our class was the winner, we all cheered and clapped. We felt proud of our teamwork and creativity. Afterward, we celebrated by taking photos, sharing snacks, and talking about our favorite decorations. It was a wonderful day!

الخميس الماضي، فاز فصلنا بمسابقة أفضل ديكور! عملنا بجد طوال الأسبوع لتجعل فصلنا يبدو ملوناً ومبهجاً. استخدمنا البالونات والشرائط والملصقات التي تحمل رسومات ورسائل. ساعد الجميع في التنظيف وترتيب الطاولات وتعليق الزينة. رسم بعض الطلاب صوراً، بينما كتب آخرون لافتات لإضاءة الحيوية على الغرفة. تجول الحكام وابتهسوا لعملنا. عندما أعلنوا فوز فصلنا هللنا جميعاً وصفقنا. شعرنا بالفخر بعملنا الجماعي وإبداعنا. بعد ذلك، احتفلنا بالتقاط الصور، وتناول الوجبات الخفيفة، والحديث عن زينتنا المفضلة. لقد كان يوماً رائعاً!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What did the students use to decorate their classroom?

- a** books and toys
- b** balloons, ribbons, and posters
- c** paint and glitter

2. How did the judges react to the decorations?

- a** they smiled and asked questions
- b** they ignored the classroom
- c** they told the students to clean up

3. What did the students do after winning?

- a** went home early
- b** celebrated by taking photos and sharing snacks
- c** started decorating again

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What did the students feel after winning the competition?

5. How did everyone in the class help with the decorations?

Test on Units 4, 5 & 6

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Egypt has many historical sites.	☐	☐
2. Oyoun Mousa is called Moses Ports.	☐	☐
3. Many guides come there to learn about culture.	☐	☐
4. Moses and the people visit Oyoun Mousa.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- You can go horseback in Dahab.
a cycling **b** climbing **c** running **d** riding
- It's cold outside. You stay indoors.
a shouldn't **b** should **c** don't **d** can't
- We crossed the canal to Port Fouad by
a bus **b** ferry **c** plane **d** bike
- Omar the string to fly his kite.
a unrolled **b** clapped **c** landed **d** slipped
- Last weekend, Tarek and Adel excited during the celebrations.
a are **b** were **c** was **d** be
- We should plenty of water every day.
a drank **b** drinks **c** drink **d** drinking

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

clear - corals - hiking - views - friend

Yesterday, we went on a trip to Sharm El Sheikh. We went ① in the mountains and saw beautiful ② My brother tried scuba diving and saw the ③ under the sea. The water was very ④ and perfect for snorkeling. We enjoyed every moment.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Once upon a time, there was a boy called Nabil. He liked making kites and flying them in the sky. One day, he went outside with his brother Yasser to fly kites in the fields near their house. They were happy when the kites flew higher and higher. Suddenly a strong wind rushed across the fields. Nabil's kite slipped through his fingers and landed on a palm tree. He felt sad, then he saw a man walking near them. They asked the man for help. The man brought a ladder from his house and climbed up carefully. He placed the kite into Nabil's hands and told Nabil to be careful and hold kites tighter next time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nabil liked flying kites with his

a father

b friend

c brother

d cousin

2. The underlined verb "placed" means

a put

b threw

c flew

d made

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Who helped Nabil to get his kite?

4. What did the man tell Nabil at the end?

5. How did the man climb up the palm trees?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. What (should to) you do at the party?
2. The children (flies) their kites every morning.
3. We (should) run in the classroom.
4. **A:** (Does) he come to school late? **B:** No, he shouldn't.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. where did the students receive gifts

[illegible]

2. let s celebrate our birthdays.

.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) اربع جمل عن:

Fun in family gatherings

games - food - gifts

This image shows a full page of a handwriting practice worksheet. It features multiple sets of horizontal dashed lines spaced evenly down the page, providing a guide for letter height and placement. The background is plain white, and there are no other markings or text present.

Listening Materials

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في الكتاب



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع
الواردة في وحدات كتاب

Bit Bit

Unit

1

Lesson 1

Last week, our teacher asked us to do a project. I worked with my cousin. We compared life in the city and life in the village. People in the city live in tall buildings and use cars. In the village, people live simply. They farm and raise animals. Every place has advantages and challenges.

Lesson 2

Last weekend, Ahmed and Omar visited a small village near the city. The weather was sunny. They walked beside the river and noticed the clean air. Omar took photos of houses, trees, and the water. Ahmed smelled the colorful flowers. They saw a small forest with tall trees and many birds. A farmer told them a story about an oasis in the desert. In the afternoon, they went to the market and bought fresh fruit. The sellers were friendly. Ahmed and Omar enjoyed the quiet streets and listened to birds singing.

Lesson 3

Last Friday, Youssef went on a trip with his grandfather to the Nile River. They woke up early and took a small boat. The water was calm, and Youssef helped his grandfather sail. He saw fishermen catching fish and children playing on the riverbank. They sat under a tree and ate bread, cheese, and cucumbers. His grandfather told him stories about the history of the Nile. Youssef felt happy because he learned many new things.

Lesson 4

I want to tell you about my trip to the mountains last weekend. On that day, the weather was cold, but the view was very beautiful. I saw tall green trees, wide fields, and a big stream flowing gently between the rocks. I felt happy and relaxed. At night, we sat near the mountains and shared stories. I ate some delicious fruits that my mother packed.

Al- Azhar Test Unit 1

Salma is in primary four. She lives in a village near Benha. Salma helps her father. Salma's father raises animals. Salma's father grows vegetables.

Test (1) - Unit 1

Amr is a good student. Amr is in primary four. He lives in Alexandria. It is a big city . The city has tall buildings. Amr loves his family. He goes to the park every Friday.

Unit 2**Lesson 2**

We can all help keep our planet clean and healthy. One way to go green is to use less paper. We can write on both sides of the page and send emails instead of paper letters. To reduce pollution, we can walk, ride a bike, or share rides with others instead of using many cars. It's also a great idea to use tote bags instead of plastic ones when shopping because plastic harms sea animals and nature.

Lesson 3

Our Earth gives us many important resources like water, electricity, and gas. We need to use them wisely so they don't run out. We can save water by turning off the tap while brushing our teeth. We can save electricity by switching off lights and fans when we leave the room. Gas helps us cook and stay warm.

Lesson 4

Animals and plants are living things. We should always be kind to animals and give them food, water, and a safe place to live. We must never hurt them or scare them. Plants also need care. They need sunlight, water, and clean soil to grow strong. We can plant trees and flowers to make our world more beautiful. If we care for animals and plants, our planet will stay healthy.

Al- Azhar Test Unit 2

My name is Mahmoud. I am in grade four. Today we will learn how to keep our planet clean with the 3Rs. They are Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle . "use these at home and school to keep the planet clean!"

Test (2) - Unit 2

We can all help keep our planet clean and healthy. One way to go green is to use less paper. We can write on both sides of the page and send emails instead of paper letters. To reduce pollution, we can walk, ride a bike, or share rides with others instead of using many cars. It's also a great idea to use tote bags instead of plastic ones when shopping because plastic harms sea animals and nature.

Unit 3**Lesson 1**

Two weeks ago, Kareem and Fatma prepared food packages for the poor people in their neighborhood. Early in the morning, they went to the market with their mother to buy everything they needed. The market was busy, full of sellers calling out and showing their vegetables and fruits. Kareem chose a kilo of bananas, while Fatma chose a kilo of peaches. They also bought tomatoes, cucumbers, and bread.

Lesson 2

Last weekend, I prepared for a picnic with my family. We bought bread, cheese, and juice. My mother also brought some fruit and chocolate. I packed some biscuits. It was fun to get everything ready, and we enjoyed the picnic.

Lesson 3

On Friday, our school had a picnic in the park. We brought healthy food like fruits and juice. For dessert, we had cookies. After eating, we shared food with our neighbors. Everyone enjoyed the day!

Lesson 4

Ahmed helped his father in the garden. First, he put on his hat. Then, he watered the flowers. His father showed him how to pick the fruits. Ahmed was happy.

Al- Azhar Test Unit 3

On Tuesday, our school organized a nature walk. We packed sandwiches, fresh fruit, and water bottles. After the walk, we shared snacks with everyone and enjoyed the fresh air.

Test (3) - Unit 3

Last week, Reem helped her mother in the kitchen. First, she washed her hands carefully. Then, she placed the bread slices on the counter. Her mother picked some cheese, and Reem washed the lettuce for the sandwiches. Together, they decided to add tomatoes to the salad.

Review 1**Test 4 Units (1 - 2 - 3)**

Last Saturday, Sarah went to her uncle's house in the park. Everyone was playing and eating. Her brother Ali was taking photos, and the little kids were running around. Everyone was happy.

Unit 4**Lesson 1**

Last weekend, we enjoyed the family gathering. It was fantastic. We played a game of chess and my father won. My aunt and mother cooked delicious food. Then, I played hide-and-seek with my cousins. My brother was good at playing the guitar. At the end, we had a great time together.

Lesson 2

Yesterday, there was a celebration in our school playground. The students wore their special clothes. We enjoyed listening to music. We played games and sang songs. Some students and their teachers to remember took photos with the special day. We saw the fireworks in the sky and everyone cheered loudly.

Al- Azhar Test Unit 4

My name's Omar. My birthday was yesterday. We got up early. My mother made a big cake. I wore new clothes red dress. I received gifts from my friends.

Test (5) - Unit 4

We celebrate the Mother's Day in March. We sit together with the families. We buy gifts for our mothers. We hang balloons and bake cakes. We enjoy listening to music together. It's an unforgettable day.

Unit 5**Al- Azhar Test Unit 5**

Our last mid-year vacation was great. We visited Oyoun Mousa last month. We rode camels in the desert. We saw fresh water springs. Moses and the people drank water from springs in the desert.

Test (6) - Unit 5

My friend, Tarek He had a wonderful weekend in Dahab with his family. They went scuba diving and saw many starfish. Then, they went hiking in the mountains and horseback riding by the beach. The journey too was amazing. They decided to visit this beautiful place next vacation.

Review 2**Test 7 Units (4 - 5 - 6)**

Egypt has important sites. Tourists come from all over the world to explore the wonders in Egypt. For example, Oyoun Mousa that is called Moses Springs: It's located in South Egypt. When people visit this place, they learn about history and culture because Moses and the people drank water from these springs during their journeys long ago.

ENGLISH

ملحق تسميع المفردات والواجب المنزلي

20
26

الصف الرابع الابتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

4th
**PRIMARY
SECOND TERM**



Lesson 1



Vocabulary

..... البيئة	 بئر
..... مبنى	 مشروع
..... مدينة	 صحراء
..... قرية	 مميزات
..... واحة	 تحديات
..... نهر	 حياة
..... جار / جارة	 أشخاص / ناس
..... خيمة	 ابن العم / ابنة العم

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يربي		 يدرك	
..... يقارن		 يزرع	
..... يشرح		 يختار	
..... يتعلم		 يتكيف/ يتأقلم	
..... يكتب			

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

واحة.....	طازج.....
سوق.....	غابة.....
بيوت.....	متحمس.....
باعة.....	هادئ.....
شوارع.....	ودود.....
مسافرون.....	الطقس.....
بارد.....	ممطر.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يزور.....		يستمتع.....	
يمشي.....		يخبر.....	
يلاحظ.....		ياخذ.....	
يشم.....		يشترى.....	
يجد.....		يسمع.....	

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- People used for water in the desert.
 a tents b wells c camels d projects
- People in the villages lived
 a badly b simply c quickly d loudly
- People can to their environment.
 a adapt b raise c form d compare
- Omar enjoyed walking in the streets.
 a friendly b dirty c slow d quiet
- My parents went to the market and fresh fruit.
 a buy b bought c buys d buying
- There are tall in the city.
 a buildings b desert c traffic d river
- Did people in the desert on camels ?
 a ride b rode c riding d rides

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

neighbors - raise - friendly - path - understand

The village is a quiet place. People live in small houses. The farmers grow many crops and ① animals. All the people in the village know their ② They are very ③ They live their life simply. They are colorful flowers near the ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There are different places in our environment. Each place has advantages and challenges. My uncle Omar lives in the village. It's quiet and the life there is simple,

but there are less jobs and a few shops. I live in the city. It's big and noisy. There are tall buildings, lots of cars and buses that make pollution, but we have more shops, parks and playgrounds. In the desert, people ride camels and live in tents. So people adapt to their places and life.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "It" refers to the.....
 a city b desert c village d life
- There are less..... in the village.
 a birds b jobs c fields d animals

B. Answer the following questions:

- What are the different places in our environment?

- What are the advantage of living in a city?

- What's the main idea of the passage?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- We (**see**) birds flying in the sky last week.
- (**Do**) you visit a village last summer?
- They (**was**) at the market yesterday.
- The sellers were friendly and (**tell**) us stories.
- Sarah (**doesn't**) go to the city last Friday.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

- do you live in a village or a city

- there was an oasis in the desert

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

صِيَاد	يَبْحِر
شَجَر النَخِيل	ضِفَّة النَهْر
حَقُول خُضْرَاء	مَحَاصِيل
قَصَص	تَارِيخ
خِيَار	شَبْكَة
مَنْظَر طَبِيعِي	خُضْرَاوَات
فَاكْهَة	مَتَحَمَّس
هَادئ	مَمَل
مَتَعَب	طَوِيل

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يَسَاعِد		يَرْقُد	
يَزْرَع		يَأْكُل	
يَبْحِر		يَرَى	
يَزُور		يَأْخُذ	

Lessons 4 & 5



Vocabulary

مَسْتَرَحِي	حَقُول
جِبَال	هَادئ
مَمَر	مَسَافَة بَعِيدَة
بِالْفَعْل	صَوْت شَيْء
جَدُول مَائِي	صَخُور
وَاسِع	مِيَاه صَافِيَة
لَذِيذ	رَائِح
هَادئ لَطِيف	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يأمل		يشعر	
يريد		يجعل / يصنع	
يشارك		يتوقف	
يحزم الحقائب		يشعر	
يأكل		يكون	

Activities

Lessons 3-4 & 5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Youssef helped his grandfather on his boat.

- a** wear **b** wake **c** feel **d** sail

2. I you were with me in my trip.

- a** walked **b** wished **c** packed **d** waved

3. The big flowed gently between the rocks.

- a** stream **b** trip **c** path **d** boat

4. The farmer grows many on his fields.

- a** cheese **b** crops **c** stories **d** nets

5. There are many tall along the riverbank.

- a** stories **b** bread **c** palm trees **d** deserts

6. The fishermen use to catch fish.

- a** nets **b** chairs **c** kites **d** shops

7. We sailed a small on the River Nile.

- a** forest **b** boat **c** view **d** toy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fishermen – stopped – calm – palm – sailed

Last week, I rode my grandfather's boat. I got up early and rode the boat. I ① along the Nile River. I saw many ② trees along the Nile River. The weather was nice and the water in the river was ③ I also saw ④ catching fish. At the end I felt excited.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed's father is a fisherman. He wakes up early to ride his boat and carries his net. He can catch a lot of fresh fish. Then, he sells some fish at the market and he takes the other fish to his house. Ahmed's mother cooks delicious fish.

One day, Ahmed asked his father to ride the boat and help him. His father smiled and took Ahmed with him. Ahmed was excited to help his father sail in the Nile River. He saw a lot of palm trees along the river and some children playing on the riverbank. His father told him stories about the Nile. When Ahmed went home, he told his mother about his wonderful trip.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed saw a lot of along the river.

- a** boats **b** fishermen **c** palm trees **d** fish

2. Ahmed's father takes fish to his house.

- a** all **b** some **c** no **d** a little

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage?

4. What did Ahmed's father tell Ahmed?

5. How did Ahmed help his father on the boat?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. What did Hoda **(learns)** about the village?
2. She **(take)** a small boat on the Nile yesterday.
3. Where did Ayman **(went)** an hour ago?
4. There **(was)** fishermen near the River Nile.
5. Where **(does)** Amr go last Thursday?
6. He **(buys)** vegetables from the market two weeks ago.
7. Adel didn't **(travels)** to the village.
8. Did Waleed **(drank)** tea two hours ago?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. we were far from the city

2. I learnt in stories from my grandfather

Test on Unit 1

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. We had a day at my uncle's city.	☐	☐
2. We enjoyed the fresh air.	☐	☐
3. The uncle brought fresh bread.	☐	☐
4. My uncle told us a story about the farm.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- When I was young, I with toys.
a play **b** plays **c** playing **d** played
- They saw a with many trees and birds.
a forest **b** project **c** knife **d** story
- The visitors on my door quickly!
a learned **b** knocked **c** walked **d** hunt
- you go to the trip at the river last summer?
a Do **b** Did **c** Are **d** Were
- I felt happy and when I heard birds singing.
a delicious **b** tired **c** relaxed **d** angry
- In 2009, my parents to a new house.
a moved **b** moves **c** are moving **d** move

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

distance - shared - peaceful - stream - mountains

Last weekend, I had an amazing trip at the mountains. My friend Hany came with me. Although the ❶ were very high, we felt excited. We saw birds flying in the ❷ There was a big ❸ flowing gently between the rocks. We sat behind the mountains and ❹ stories together. Then, we ate food that our mothers packed.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Gamal's family decided to travel to a small village near their city. They traveled by train. When they arrived in the village, they sat under a big tree to rest. They saw fields with many crops. There were farmers working hard in their fields. One of the farmers gave Gamal some fresh fruit to eat. The weather was sunny. There were many birds singing in the sky. The village was quiet. The streets in the village were clean. They went back home, they were excited and wanted to visit this village again.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The streets in the village were
☐ a clean ☐ b dirty ☐ c busy ☐ d noisy
2. Gamal's family sat under a big tree to
☐ a eat ☐ b rest ☐ c play ☐ d sleep

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Gamal's family do when they arrived in the village?

4. Who did Gamal's family see in the fields?

5. What did the farmer give Gamal?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My mother (**doesn't**) cook lunch yesterday.
2. I (**buy**) a lot of food at the market a few days ago.
3. They went to the village and (**see**) amazing views.
4. (**Were**) you travel to Aswan last year?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what did people in villages do

2. the village is different from the city

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) أربع جمل عن:

Your life in a city

Guiding words

buildings – busy – offices

Unit 2 Our World, Our Responsibility

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

كوكب.....	الماء.....
يعيد استخدام.....	الكهرباء.....
يقلل.....	زجاجة.....
يعيد التدوير.....	ورق.....
إعادة التعبئة.....	بلاستيك.....
الأشياء.....	يطبق.....
كلا/ كلاهما (الاثنين).....	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتجنب.....		يعني.....	
يهدر/ يضيع.....		يفعل.....	
يتعلم.....		يضيع.....	
يحتاج.....		يرمي/ يتخلص من.....	
يحدث.....		يرمز إلى/ يعني.....	
يملك/ لديه.....			

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

.....حقبة قماشية.....	تلوث.....
.....نفايات/قمامة.....	سلة قمامة.....
.....بريد إلكتروني.....	البيئة المحيطة.....
.....كائنات بحرية.....	آمن.....
.....جوانب.....	بريد إلكتروني.....
.....صفحة.....	التسوق.....
.....صديق للبيئة.....	خطابات ورقية.....
	صحي.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
.....يمشي.....		يركب.....	
.....يشارك.....		يحافظ على.....	
.....يستمتع.....		يذكر.....	
.....يستخدم.....		يؤذي.....	
.....ينظف.....		يرمي.....	
.....يكتب.....		يرحل.....	

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. means turning old materials into new things.
 a Refilling b Recycling c Reducing d Throwing
2. She didn't eat breakfast drank milk.
 a nor b but c or d and
3. I went to the doctor's I was ill.
 a because b nor c or d but
4. It's very hot today, I'll wear my sunglasses.
 a or b nor c so d because
5. We should what we learn at school.
 a throw b apply c waste d avoid
6. The is a place where we all live and we must keep it safe.
 a planet b plastic c paper d plane

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

refilling - waste - reduce - ones - apply

We had a lesson at school yesterday about how to keep the environment clean. We should use the 3Rs. We should ① water and electricity. We can work together to ② what we learn at school and at home. We can use things again like ③ bottles, instead of throwing them away. Turn old things into new ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Throwing things away is a big problem in our world. We should keep our planet clean. We should throw rubbish in the bins. We should avoid using plastic bottles and bags because they harm animals and pollute nature. We can use tote bags instead. When we leave our houses, we should turn off the lights and fans. Also saving water

Dictation & Exercises

is important, we should turn off the taps while washing our hands and brushing our teeth. Small changes we can do every day can change our world to the better.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can use bags to protect our environment.

a leather

b tote

c plastic

d paper

2. To save water, we should the taps.

a close

b open

c throw

d clean

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How can we keep our planet clean?

4. Why are plastic bottles and bags dangerous?

5. What can we do to save lights and water?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I went to school late **(but)** I didn't sleep early.

2. You can eat fruits **(but)** you can stay healthy.

3. She doesn't like fish **(and)** does she like rice.

4. I want to study **(nor)** I'm very tired.

5. The girls helped at home **(but)** their mother was sick.

6. Hossam plays computer games, **(or)** his parents get angry.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. how can we go green

2. people should work together to keep planet safe

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

الماء.....	موارد.....
الكهرباء.....	تنفذ / تنتهي.....
بحكمة.....	دافع.....
إطفاء / إغلاق.....	كوكب.....
الأفعال / التصرفات.....	يغلق / يطفئ.....
تنظيف الأسنان.....	الجميع.....
صحي.....	فرق / اختلاف.....
بناية.....	أثاث.....
فرو.....	عداء.....
الغاز.....	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يُذكر.....		يُعطي.....	
يهدر.....		ينفذ.....	
يستخدم.....		يغادر.....	
يبقى.....		يصنع / يحدث.....	

Lessons

4 & 5



Vocabulary

..... الاعتناء بـ	 تربة زراعية
..... عطوف	 قوى
..... امن	 ضوء الشمس
..... جميل	 نباتات
..... حيوانات	 يبقى بصحة جيدة

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يحمى		 يعتنى بـ	
..... يبقى		 يؤذي	
..... يحتاج		 يخيف	
..... يعطى		 ينمو	

Activities

Lessons 3, 4 & 5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. helps us cook and stay warm.

a Water

b Gas

c Electricity

d Light

2. Using electricity and water doesn't affect the planet.

a carelessly

b carefully

c badly

d loudly

3. We should our family and friends to save resources.

- a** remind **b** stay **c** waste **d** leave

4. We must never or scare animals.

- a** turn **b** hurt **c** protect **d** care

5. We should resources to help the planet.

- a** save **b** leave **c** brush **d** play

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

turning - warm - run - lights - wisely

There are many important resources on our Earth. We must use these resources
 1 because they 2 out. For example, we can save water by
 3 off the top and switch off the 4 to save electricity. We
 should save what Earth gives us to help the planet.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Water, electricity and gas are important resources for our daily life. We use water for drinking, cleaning and cooking. We use electricity to turn on TV, lights, computers and other devices. Gas is used for cooking and heating. We should protect our planet by using these resources wisely. We should remind other people to use the resources carefully.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "turn on" means

- a** turn off **b** turn up **c** turn out **d** turn for

2. We should other people to use resources wisely.

- a** forget **b** give **c** stay **d** remind

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What are the most important resources?

4. Summarize the text in two sentences.

5. Why is it important to use these resources wisely?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. It was cold outside (but) we didn't go shopping.

2. We didn't go to school (or) did we finish our homework.

3. People should be kind to animals (so) give them food.

4. She finished her homework (nor) watched TV before bed.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. how do you protect the Earth's resources

2. planting trees make our world beautiful

Test on Unit 2

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Plants don't need soil.	☐	☐
2. Animals need a lot of care.	☐	☐
3. Taking care of plants makes the planet healthy.	☐	☐
4. We should hurt animals.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We don't burn plastic, do we throw it on the ground.

- a** and **b** but **c** so **d** nor

2. You can old bottles to make art or store things.

- a** replay **b** change **c** reuse **d** reduce

3. We can recycle paper it helps save trees.

- a** or **b** but **c** nor **d** because

4. You can water by turning off the tap.

- a** throw **b** save **c** pour **d** remind

5. We live in a big and beautiful

- a** world **b** bus **c** fur **d** storm

6. My father was sick he didn't go to his work.

- a** but **b** so **c** nor **d** or

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

less - new - Recycle - again - fresh

To protect our planet, we should follow the 3Rs: Reduce, Reuse and ①
Reduce means using ② for example don't waste water or electricity.
Reuse means using things ③ instead of throwing them away. Recycling
is turning old items into ④ ones.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Our Earth gives us many things we need, such as clean air, sunlight and food. We must take care of these gifts by using them wisely. For example, we can keep the air clean by planting trees. We can also save energy by using the sunlight during the day instead of turning on lamps. When we take care of Earth, we help make it a safer and happier place for all living things.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should use Earth's gifts so we don't waste them.

- a** loudly **b** wisely **c** slowly **d** carelessly

2. Planting trees helps the air.

- a** pollute **b** clean **c** break **d** hide

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the text about?

4. How can we keep the air clean?

5. What can we do to save energy during the day?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Which drink do you like, tea (but) coffee?
2. We went to the park (nor) it was sunny.
3. I visited my friend, (or) he was sick.
4. My mother can go shopping (so) cook the lunch.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. don't leave the tap turning on

2. how does plastic harm sea animals

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) أربع جمل عن:

Let's Go Green

Guiding words

reduce - tote bags - throw

Unit 3 What's in the Package?

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

.....حي سكاني	طعام معلب
.....عبوات الطعام	وعد
.....خيار	احتياجات
.....خوخ	بائعون
.....موز	مبتسمون
.....طماطم	مسن / عجوز
.....خضراوات	يصعد الدرج / السلالم
.....التسليم / التوصيل	خبز

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
.....يُحضّر		يعطي	
.....يصل		يختار	
.....يعد		يجلس	
.....يتحدث		يشترى	
.....يستمتع		يذهب	

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

حليب	تحلية / حلوى
شوكولاته	عبوة
نزهة خلوية	بسكويت
سندوتش	طعام من الحبوب
الجميع	قطعة من
علبة من	كثير من
عبوة من	كيلو من
زجاجة من	شريحة من
عصير البرتقال	شاي
نوع	زبدة

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يجهز / يعبئ		يحصل على	
يذكر		يحب	
يضيف		يكون	

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I want a of chocolate for dessert.

- a** bottle **b** slice **c** kilo **d** bar

2. Samy bought a kilo of

- a** bread **b** juice **c** water **d** oranges

3. How many do you need?

- a** books **b** rice **c** tea **d** pasta

4. After shopping, we food carefully into bags.

- a** packed **b** promised **c** knocked **d** talked

5. There are bananas in the kitchen.

- a** an **b** a **c** some **d** any

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

chocolate - dark - carton - pack - bring

Noura and her mother prepared for the picnic. They went to the supermarket. They bought a ¹ of milk. Her mother got the milk ², but Noura liked the ³ chocolate. Then, her mother reminded her to ⁴ a kilo of butter. They packed everything into the shopping bag.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Mrs Hoda likes going shopping every Friday. She's good at cooking, so she buys a lot of things at the market. She always has a picnic with her family in the open air. She's very happy to prepare food for the picnic. She buys a carton of milk, a bottle of orange juice and a big pack of biscuits. Then, she buys a kilo of apples and two kilos of bananas.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mrs Hoda buys a bottle of

a juice

b oil

c milk

d water

2. Mrs Hoda always has a for her family.

a dessert

b picnic

c shopping

d trip

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in a sentence.

4. Why is Mrs Hoda happy?

5. How many kilos of bananas does Mrs Hoda buy?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. There is **(a)** apple on the table.

2. We have three **(bars)** of bread.

3. How many **(apple)** do you want?

4. They have a **(pieces)** of cheese.

5. He needs **(a)** orange from the market.

6. How **(much)** kilos of rice is in the kitchen?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. Let s make sandwiches for breakfast

2. how much cheese would you like

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

نزهة خلوية	وجبة خفيفة
صحي	يشارك
قائد	عنقود من / سبابة
سلال	مقرمش
الجيران	لامع
مربعات	ركن الوجبات الخفيفة

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يطلب		يضع	
يرتب		يعطي	
يصف		ياكل	
ينضم		يكسر	
يضع			

Lessons

4 & 5



Vocabulary

المطبخ	شرائح الخبز
شطائر	سلطة
خس	وجبة
أهمية	النظافة
بغاية	مسؤولية
الغداء	وجبة جاهزة
بفخر	طبق
	الطاولة / المنضدة

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يغسل		يمسك	
يتسم		يتوقف	
يشعر		يعرف	
ينادي		يصنع / يعد	

Activities

Lessons 3&4



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I bought a of bananas.

a pack

b bunch

c slice

d bar

2. My mother up a healthy lunch.

a joined

b gave

c set

d asked

3. After the picnic, we gave food to the poor people.

a fresh

b tall

c enormous

d strong

4. We put the bread slices on the

a wrist

b counter

c door

d window

5. Lettuce is a kind of

a fruit

b vegetables

c cheese

d dessert

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

elderly - share - kitchen - carry - neighborhood

Helping others is important thing in our community. Helping our mothers in the

① Helping the ② people climb the stairs. In our ③

we can pack food and ④ with others.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Our class arranged for a picnic last weekend. We went to the Orman Garden. Our teacher was responsible to ask each group of students about bringing healthy food. My group prepared baskets full of tomatoes, carrots, cucumbers, and peaches. The other group prepared a carton of milk and a bunch of bananas. We shared the delicious food together. We had fun. After eating, we collected the fresh food into packages for the students who couldn't come. The students were pleased and thanked us. They promised to join us next picnic.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We the delicious food together.

a promised

b shared

c bought

d joined

2. We packed the fresh food into

a bins

b the market

c packages

d bags

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What kind of food did the students prepare?

4. What did the students do after eating?

5. Who was responsible to ask the students about the food?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I have **(a)** apple.

2. There are **(a)** packs of biscuits in a bag.

3. It was one of the happiest days I **(have)** this year.

4. Last Friday **(is)** a special day.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. we put shiny tomatoes on the plate

2. what did Reem and her mom do together

Test on Unit 3

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Kamal and Tarek didn't water the plants.	☐	☐
2. The park was better after hard work.	☐	☐
3. Kamal and Tarek grew new vegetables.	☐	☐
4. They promised to clean the park again.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We don't have milk left for our tea.

- a** a **b** an **c** some **d** any

2. There are five in the kitchen. We need to clean them.

- a** neighbors **b** plates **c** friends **d** days

3. The children needed to the stairs to go up the second floor.

- a** play **b** run **c** climb **d** walk

4. I'm hungry. Can I have cheese sandwich?

- a** an **b** or **c** many **d** a

5. Where did the school picnic place?

- a** go **b** take **c** pack **d** prepare

6. The grocer sold me a cucumbers for the salad.

- a** any **b** kilo of **c** some **d** many

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My friend Salma loves helping her mom at home. Every morning, she makes her bed and tidies her room. After breakfast, she helps wash the dishes. Then, she waters the plants in the garden. When her mother cooks food, she helps her by cutting vegetables or setting the table. Her mother always reminds her to wash her

Dictation & Exercises

hands carefully before making food. Now, her mother is very happy to see Salma being responsible in the kitchen.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After , Salma helps wash the dishes.

a lunch

b breakfast

c dinner

d snack

2. Salma's mother reminds her to wash her carefully.

a hands

b room

c hair

d garden

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in two sentences.

4. What does Salma's mother remind her?

5. Why is Salma's mother happy?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She bought (**a**) mango juice.

2. We don't have (**some**) pencil colors.

3. There (**are**) some bread for breakfast.

4. Do you have (**a**) rice to cook?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. let's call the family for lunch

2. what did they pack for the picnic

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) أربع جمل عن:

Helping parents at home

Guiding words

kitchen - carry - cleanliness

Unit 4 Let's Celebrate

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

يتبادل الهدايا	يلعب لعبة
يعزف موسيقى	يتواصل مع الأصدقاء
لعبة الشطرنج	يتناول طعام خاص
تجمع عائلي	لعبة الاستغماية
العطف	آلة العود
فرقة موسيقية	مدهش
حلويات لذيذة	نهاية الاسبوع
دجاج مشوي	المسرح
	احتفال

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يهتف		يضحك	
يصفق		يجلس	
يتبادل		يفوز	
يؤدي / يعزف		يحضر	
يستمتع		يمتلك	

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

يرتدي ملابس خاصة	يصفق
بالونات	سور
بصوت عالٍ	العب نارية
فيلم فيديو	ملعب المدرسة
ضخم	لا ينسي
جميل	الجزء المفضل
بسعادة	لامع
	مستعد

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يبدو		يضع	
يضحك		يغني	
يبتسم		يلتقط	
يبدأ		يأتي	

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We our family gathering every weekend.
 a clap b enjoy c eat d perform
- The teacher helped the students to work hard.
 a crowded b colorful c soft d kind
- Everyone in the celebration wore clothes.
 a special b delicious c dirty d quiet
- We saw in the sky during the celebration.
 a clothes b fireworks c bags d cakes

5. My brother likes music on his guitar.

- a** performing **b** exchanging **c** talking **d** bringing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

grilled - wore - talked - gifts - socialized

Last week, we enjoyed our family gathering. We played games. We sat together, **1** and listened to music. Then, we ate special food like **2** chicken, cake and fruit salad. We brought **3** and exchanged them together. We **4** with our family all day.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, it was my sister's birthday. We decorated the fences in our garden. We hung up colorful balloons and shiny lights. My sister wore special clothes. Everyone sang, clapped, laughed and enjoyed the music. My brother lit up fireworks in the sky. I took photos with my sister and we smiled happily to remember the special day. My mother made a big cake and she placed it on the **enormous** table. We brought gifts to my sister and she was very happy and thanked us.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We decorated the in our gardens.

- a** fences **b** stages **c** walls **d** gates

2. The underlined word "**enormous**" means very

- a** small **b** big **c** long **d** tall

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where did the birthday take place?
4. Why did we take photos?
5. What did the mother make?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Last Friday, Eman (**celebrates**) her birthday.
2. My friends (**exchanging**) gifts last year.
3. Yesterday, we (**light**) up the fireworks in the sky.
4. What musical instrument (**does**) Ayman play yesterday?

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

يزين.....	يعلق شرائط.....
ضيوف.....	شموع.....
يغلف الهدايا.....	مبتهج.....
الصداقة.....	الضحك.....
صور.....	سعادة.....
أمنية.....	الحب.....
المتعة.....	طعام لذيذ.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يجهز.....		ينضم / يشارك.....	
يستلم.....		يغلف.....	
يزين.....		يعلق.....	
يضيء.....		ينفخ (الشموع).....	

Lessons

4 & 5



Vocabulary

عمال.....	عيد العمال.....
حي سكني.....	جنود شجعان.....
عمل جاد.....	أبطال.....
يلوح بالأعلام.....	يُكرم.....
كارت ملون.....	لحظات سعيدة.....
فخور.....	يُقدر.....
مجهودات.....	حر.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
ينضم		يصنع	
يشارك		يغني	
يُقدر		يفعل	
يحرر			

Activities

Lessons 3, 4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- My cousin put ten on his birthday cake.
 a gifts b candles c guests d boys
- We should workers for their efforts.
 a join b free c make d appreciate
- The birthday celebration was full joy and laughter.
 a of b at c on d at
- We hung bright lights to make the house
 a cheerful b tasty c small d dark
- There were a lot of carrying gifts in the party.
 a visitors b fences c candles d ribbons

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

proud - country - remember - brave - forget

Celebrating Sinai Liberation Day is very important. It's a special day to
 1 when Sinai freed. I learned about the 2 soldiers
 who helped free Sinai. Everyone felt 3 and happy to celebrate our
 4

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

We celebrate the Egyptian Police Day on January 25 every year. It is an important day to thank the brave police officers who keep us safe. At school, we prepare a small party to show our love for Egypt. We decorate the class with balloons and pictures of the Egyptian flag. Some students read short stories about brave people, and others sing national songs. We must always respect the police officers who work hard to protect our country.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egyptian Police Day is a day to

a play

b forget

c thank

d sleep

2. We decorate the class with balloons and

a books

b pictures

c animals

d toys

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

4. When do we celebrate the Egyptian Police Day?

5. Who protects our country?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. These men (**works**) hard in their office.

2. The (**flower**) grow in the garden.

3. There are (**balloon**) hanging in the garden.

4. Everyone (**wears**) a party hat and joined the fun.

Test on Unit 4

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



	T	F
1. Last year Nabil celebrated his birthday.	☐	☐
2. Nabil's friends performed music.	☐	☐
3. Nabil and his friends had a nice meal.	☐	☐
4. There weren't any cakes on Nabil's birthday.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Zein blew out the
a gifts **b** games **c** books **d** candles
- We shiny ribbons in the celebration.
a hung **b** woke **c** baked **d** freed
- Did Mona's mother cakes on her birthday?
a bake **b** baking **c** baked **d** bakes
- The bus at the corner at seven o'clock every morning.
a stop **b** stopped **c** stopping **d** stops
- The children games in the garden every week.
a play **b** plays **c** playing **d** played
- When the party finished, everyone made a
a wish **b** photo **c** music **d** food

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

hard - appreciate - honor - efforts - give

Labor Day is a happy day for all workers. On this day, we ① workers and all the ② work they do. We have a holiday and watch movies on Labor Day. Everyone should ③ workers and thank them for their ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi, my name's Adel. I'm a student in primary Four. Every Friday, I spend a wonderful day with my family. First, I get up late and have breakfast with my family. We talk and laugh together. During our family gathering, we play games. My father teaches me to play chess. My sister Mona plays hide and seek with her cousin Fatma. They hide behind the door and have fun. In the afternoon, I go outside to play football with my brother Hossam in the club near our house. Then, we return back home to share lunch together. We watch TV at night and my father tells us funny stories. Our life is full of joy and laughter.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I spend a wonderful day last

a Monday

b Friday

c Tuesday

d Wednesday

2. Mona plays hide and seek with her

a sister

b cousin

c brother

d friend

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When does Adel get up late?

4. What does Adel's father teach him?

5. Where do Adel and his brother play football?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I (eat) delicious cake yesterday.
2. We sang songs and (waving) flags in the celebration
3. The sports day (take) place every year.
4. The (boring) school concert made everyone smile.
5. How does birthday celebration help people (shows) love?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. how do you celebrate your birthday

2. ramy shared happiness with his friends

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

An important celebration

Guiding words

birthday - joy - tasty food

Unit 5

Exploring wonders in Egypt

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

ينابيع مياه	عجبة طبيعية
رحلة	جنوب سيناء
البدو	رحلة
عيون موسى	الصحراء
حياة تقليدية	نقى
خيام	ارث
السياح	طوب
أجيال	سيدنا موسى
جامع	شيق
النجوم	موقع تاريخي

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يحتاج		يتعلم	
ينام		يمشي	
يُسلم		يستمتع	
يتبع		يلسم	
يشرب			

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

الغطس بانبوب	ركوب الخيل
الغوص باستخدام (جهاز تنفس)	أجازة نصف العام
نجمة البحر	رائع
الشعب المرجانية	أجازة
أنشطة	بالفعل
كريم واقى من الشمس	بالتأكيد
بالداخل	حاد
التنزه سيرا على الأقدام	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يلمس		يقضى (وقتاً)	
يزور		يرى	
يلتقط		يخبر	
يسكن			

A

ctivities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We wear sunscreen when it's hot.
 a should b shouldn't c aren't d doesn't
2. Should we swimming in the pool?
 a went b go c going d goes
3. I go riding in the mountain.
 a horseback b touch c tent d water
4. are living sea animals.
 a Corals b Camels c Springs d Stars
5. Many visitors come to Oyoum Mousa to enjoy the clean
 a sand b desert c water d tent

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

journey - quiet - place - tourists - local

Oyoum Mousa has fresh springs where visitors can drink and enjoy their times. Many ① like to go there to enjoy drinking from these springs. During the ②, they walk in the ③ desert. They meet ④ bedouins and see their tents.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Karima and Salma spent their mid-year vacation in Dahab. They went with their family. They stayed in a hotel near the beach. On the first day of their journey, they went scuba diving and saw many starfish. They were very colorful and amazing. After that, they went hiking in the mountains. It was very hot so they put sunscreen. They did many activities like horseback riding and snorkeling. The vacation was fun and they wished to go again soon.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- On the day of the journey, they went scuba diving.
a fourth **b** third **c** first **d** second
- They did many activities like..... and snorkeling.
a camping **b** horseback riding **c** swimming **d** fishing

B. Answer the following questions:

- What activities did they do in the mountains?

- Where did they stay in Dahab?

- What does the underlined word "They" refer to?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- You (**should to**) listen to your parents.
- The sea is calm, so I (**shouldn't**) go snorkeling.
- I should (**using**) sunglasses. It's very hot.
- Hisham is sick, so he (**shouldn't**) go to the doctor.
- You should (**drank**) a lot of water.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

- you should study hard

- should he save water

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

كورنيش.....	معدية.....
رحلة قصيرة.....	طائر النورس.....
لا تنسى.....	نسيم.....
ممتع.....	أنشطة.....
منظر البحر.....	ضجيج مبهج.....
كوبرى.....	لذيد / شهى.....
ركوبة.....	مدينة بورسعيد.....
ماكولات بحرية.....	مدينة بورفؤاد.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يبدأ.....		يضحك.....	
يصل.....		يطير.....	
يمشى.....		يلتقط.....	
يبحر.....		يُعبّر.....	

Lessons

4 & 5

Vocabulary

بركة مياه	يدعو
هادئ	سمك ملون
مملوء بـ	مذهل
مغامرة	صافي
يتمنى / أمنية	مثالي

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يكتشف		يملك	
يبدو		يصنع / يجعل	
يتمنى			

Activities

Lessons 3-4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We go to bed early to be healthy.
 a shouldn't b should c can't d aren't
2. Many tourists like going to see corals.
 a fishing b camping c scuba diving d hiking
3. We felt a cool by the beach.
 a ferry b breeze c soil d coin
4. They along the Corniche and saw ships.
 a took b laughed c caught d walked
5. A: you throw litter on the playground? B: No, I shouldn't.
 a Shouldn't b Should c Were d Did

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

view - seagulls - trip - sailing - noise

I enjoy going to places by the sea. Last vacation I visited Port Said. I started my
 1 early in the morning. I walked along the Corniche and watched ships
 2 I saw 3 flying. I enjoyed the quiet street and the beautiful
 sea 4 It was a memorable trip.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

A trip to Port Said is a fun adventure for children, young and elderly people. When you visit Port Said, don't forget to take a ferry across the canal to Port Fouad. You can see many ships sailing near the point where the Suez Canal begins. You can sit on the shore and eat tasty seafood. You can take photos of seagulls flying above the sea.

Use the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can see many near the point where the Suez Canal begins.

a seagulls

b ships

c ferries

d pictures

2. Don't forget to take a to cross the canal.

a bus

b ferry

c plane

d ship

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in a sentence.

4. What can you do when you sit on the shore?

5. Which birds can you see in Port Said?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. It's very windy. We (**should**) go outside.

2. Hisham shouldn't (**drove**) too fast.

3. You (**shouldn't to**) play too much computer games.

4. It's cold. I (**shouldn't**) wear a jacket.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. did you enjoy your trip in Suez Canal

2. people in the village follow a traditional life

Test on Unit 5

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



	T	F
1. South Sinai is a place for adventure.	☐	☐
2. You can dive in the mountains.	☐	☐
3. You can't explore the deserts in South Sinai.	☐	☐
4. South Sinai is a place full of nature and history.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Visitors can meet local and learn about their traditional life.

- a** bedouins **b** springs **c** photos **d** corals

2. You shouldn't in the streets.

- a** ran **b** run **c** running **d** runs

3. The water is very clear and for snorkeling.

- a** prefect **b** bad **c** noisy **d** tasty

4. **A:** Should I touch the corals? **B:** No, you

- a** should **b** shouldn't **c** could **d** didn't

5. Oyoum Mousa is an important historical for everyone.

- a** sit **b** tent **c** city **d** town

6. My kind friend me a gift last weekend.

- a** spent **b** gave **c** ate **d** sailed

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

historical - photos - breeze - along - above

Alexandria is a perfect place for your vacation. You can walk ① the Corniche and enjoy the cool ② and the beautiful sea view. You can visit many ③ sites there and take ④ to remember your visit. I like spending my vacation there every year.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt is a land full of history and beauty. One of its most magical places is Dahab. It's in South Sinai. It's a perfect place for snorkeling and you can see many colorful fish and beautiful corals. The view of the mountains is amazing. You can visit the Blue Hole because it's fun and full of adventure. Tourists spend their times in Dahab to do many activities like scuba diving and snorkeling.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt has the most places like Dahab.

a magical

b peaceful

c unusual

d crowded

2. The view of the are amazing.

a activities

b mountains

c rivers

d corals

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where is Dahab located?

4. How do tourists spend their times in Dahab?

5. What can you see when you go snorkeling?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You (**should**) eat too many sweets.
2. You definitely should (**visiting**) Dahab.
3. We should (**wears**) comfortable shoes during hiking.
4. Yes, you (**shouldn't**) go snorkeling now.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. did you visit a place by the sea

2. i ate tasty seafood in Port Said

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) أربع جمل عن:

A day between two ports

Guiding words

trip - ferry - joyful

امتحانات عامة على منهج الفصل الدراسي الثاني

Test 1

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Nabil lives in a big city.	☐	☐
2. Nabil's neighborhood is busy.	☐	☐
3. There are a lot of gardens in Nabil's neighborhood.	☐	☐
4. Nabil helped the elderly people.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We should the elderly people.
 a helps b helped c helping d help
- Noha a gift for her sister last week.
 a buy b buys c bought d buying
- People must care of the planet.
 a recycle b take c reuse d apply
- I ate a of chocolate.
 a bar b carton c bottle d slice
- They special clothes on birthdays.
 a climbed b sang c came d wore
- A is a kind of musical instrument.
 a picnic b gift c chess d hide and seek

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

carton - slices - excited - bought - wore

We prepared for the picnic with my friends. We went to the park. I brought a
 1 of milk. My friend Hisham bought five 2 of
 bread. My friend Omar 3 a kilo of apples. We were 4
 to prepare all these things.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last week, Ahmed had a special party at home. In the morning, he felt excited and started preparing for the party. His brother Yasser and his sister Noha helped him. They decorated the house with balloons and colorful lights. His mom baked a **yummy** cake and Ahmed put ten candles on it. When the guests arrived, they played games, danced, sang songs and ate delicious food. Ahmed was so happy because he received gifts from his friends. It was an amazing day full of fun and happiness.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ahmed felt in the morning.
 a sad b tired c excited d angry
- Ahmed put candles on the cake.
 a five b ten c nine d two

B. Answer the following questions:

- What did Ahmed put on top of the cake?
- What did the guests do when they arrived?
- Why was Ahmed so happy?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I didn't (**watched**) TV.
- Can I have (**a**) apple, please?
- We have pizza (**but**) sandwiches for lunch.
- Where (**do**) they go last holiday?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- we live in a beautiful world
- how can we protect the Nile River

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) اربع جمل عن:

Living in a small village

weather - quiet - river

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 2

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Sharing rides with others reduces pollution.	☐	☐
2. We should plant more trees.	☐	☐
3. We should throw litter on the ground.	☐	☐
4. Using bins keeps the streets dirty.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The teacher homework two days ago.
 a gave b gives c give d giving
- He didn't train well, he worked badly.
 a so b but c or d and
- They colorful flowers near the river.
 a smelled b told c visited d listened
- A/An is a small place with few people and many farms.
 a building b oasis c village d building
- They at the market yesterday.
 a was b were c are d is
- I packed of biscuits for the dessert.
 a bottle b packs c pieces d slices

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

wells - tents - building - ride - night

Living in the desert is difficult, but Bedouin people adapt to live there. They
 1 on camels. They live in 2 and use 3 for water.
 During the day it's very hot and at 4 it's very cold.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Every vacation, Mr Hany visits his parents in the village. He likes going there in the summer. He likes wearing his sunglasses and a hat when he is walking along the river. His father has a farm. He plants all kinds of fruit. Mr Hany helps his father to pick up apples and mangoes. Mr Hany likes making mango juice. His father sells the fruit at the market and gets a lot of money.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mr Hany visits his parents in the
 a city b desert c village d school
- Mr Hany helps his father to pick up
 a bananas b apples and mangoes
 c oranges d grapes

B. Answer the following questions:

- What's the text about?
- What does Mr Hany like wearing in the village?
- Where does Mr Hany visit his parents?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- There (are) some rice in the kitchen.
- Should you (brought) a gift for your mom?
- How many (desk) are there in your classroom?
- She (has) a carton of milk yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- where did you go last vacation
- We bought candles on birthdays

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) اربع جمل عن:

Protecting our planet

recycling - waste - reduce

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 3

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. We went to Dahab with my friends.	☐	☐
2. We saw dolphins and whales in Dahab.	☐	☐
3. My father went hiking in Dahab.	☐	☐
4. The corals were sharp.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- They didn't have food or fruit juice.
 a some b an c any d a
- Corals are living animals.
 a sea b pet c wild d tiny
- We to a new house in 2009.
 a moving b moved c moves d move
- My sister enjoyed on a brown horse.
 a cycling b riding c visiting d diving
- What do you for a school picnic?
 a prepare b reduce c cause d throw
- You eat healthy food.
 a shouldn't b should c aren't d doesn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

stories - bottles - cheerful - gathered - chess

Last Friday, Hoda visited her grandparents. The whole family ① in the garden. They talked, laughed and played some games. My brother played ② with cousin Adel. Hoda listened to her grandmother's ③ Everyone felt ④ on that amazing day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Siwa Oasis is a beautiful place in the Western Desert in Egypt. This oasis has natural springs, palm trees and amazing sand dunes. In ancient times, travelers stopped to rest and drink water there. Today many visitors come to this oasis. They enjoy sitting in this quiet oasis. They take photos and explore the nature of this area.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "there" refers to the
 a travelers b oasis c visitors d dunes
- There are natural in Siwa Oasis.
 a wells b lakes c springs d rivers

B. Answer the following questions:

- Where is Siwa Oasis located?
- Why was Siwa Oasis important to ancient travelers?
- What can visitors do when they visit Siwa Oasis?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I had a bottle (**for**) milk.
- When did Hisham (**prepares**) food packages?
- These clever girls (**does**) their homework every day.
- There are a lot of (**sandwich**) for lunch.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- what was in the basket picnic
- we should help elderly people

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) اربع جمل عن:

Saving our planet

care - animals - plants

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 4

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Oyoun Mousa is a historical site.	☐	☐
2. Long ago Oyoun Mousa has lots of springs.	☐	☐
3. There are beaches in Oyoun Mousa.	☐	☐
4. Many visitors enjoy the quiet desert.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The rabbit has soft on its body.
 a fur b star c knee d corn
- We should new ideas in our science project.
 a ignore b apply c turn d pour
- We throw litter on the ground.
 a should b shouldn't c aren't d weren't
- The takes care of sick people.
 a nurse b teacher c runner d farmer
- I bought of apples.
 a some b a kilo c any d an
- Ayman English an hour ago.
 a studying b studied c studies d study

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

tap - warm - waste - switching - distance

There are many important resources. For example, water, electricity and gas. We shouldn't ① them. We should turn off the ② while brushing our teeth. We can save electricity by ③ off lights and fans. Gas helps us cook and stay ④ We can remind our family and friends to use these resources wisely.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar helped his father in the kitchen. He washed his hands carefully and set the table. Last Friday, Omar cut cucumbers and his father prepared chicken. They made a small salad together. His mother baked delicious bread. Omar arranged the food on plates and felt proud. His father smiled and was happy to see him being helpful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Hisham and his father made together.
 a salad b juice c cake d a sandwich
- Omar arranged the food on
 a cucumbers b plates c the stairs d bread

B. Answer the following questions:

- Who baked delicious bread?
- How did Omar feel?
- Why was Omar's father happy?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- They don't need to (**bought**) a carton of milk.
- She doesn't eat pizza (**so**) pasta for lunch.
- We saw (**an**) elephants at the zoo.
- He (**visits**) the library an hour ago.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- plastic harms sea animals
- where did the school picnic take place

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

Your favorite celebration

decorated - candles - games

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 5

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	T	F
1. Recycling protects our planet.	☐	☐
2. We can turn new materials to old things.	☐	☐
3. We can use more plastic bottles.	☐	☐
4. We shouldn't take care of nature and animals.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We wear sunglasses on hot days.
a aren't **b** shouldn't **c** should **d** were
- What did the students share week?
a every **b** ago **c** last **d** at
- She had to climb the to reach the top floor.
a packages **b** stairs **c** mountains **d** trees
- I life in the city and the village in my project.
a compared **b** lived **c** traveled **d** raised
- A/An is a green place with water and trees in the desert.
a city **b** village **c** building **d** oasis
- The flowers in the garden every year.
a grow **b** grows **c** growing **d** grow

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

tasty - seagulls - sailing - breeze - taking

Our school prepared for a trip to Port Said. We took the school bus at seven in the morning. When we arrived, we saw ships ① and there were ① flying above us. The weather was nice and we enjoyed the cool ② Then, we ate ③ food at a big restaurant. We were excited to go again.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Adel's family held a picnic in our neighborhood. They arranged a healthy picnic. Adel's father bought fruit and vegetables. Adel's brother Karim lined up a slice of bread for everyone and added a piece of cheese on top. There were a bunch of bananas, shiny tomatoes and cucumbers beside peaches.

Adel's family, and their neighbors ate together. They felt happiness. After eating, they packed fresh food and gave it to the neighbors who couldn't come. Everyone thanked and promised to join next time again soon.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The picnic was in the
 a school b park c Adel's house d neighborhood
- Adel's family gave the rest of food to their
 a friends b neighbors c families d parents

B. Answer the following questions:

- What did everyone promise Adel's family?
- How did the neighbors feel during the picnic?
- What kind of picnic did Adel's family arrange?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- She (work) in the garden last Monday.
- We have (any) friends in our city.
- You should (sleeping) early.
- I didn't finish my homework (or) I felt tired.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- how do you fly a kite
- the games were so fun

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) أربع جمل عن:

A Vacation in Dahab

wonderful - snorkeling - corals

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 6

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Omar does a project about celebrations.	☐	☐
2. Omar likes life in the city.	☐	☐
3. There are tall buildings in the city.	☐	☐
4. People live simply in the village.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The Nile River through Egypt.

a raises

b flows

c adapts

d fails

2. We should send instead of paper letters.

a emails

b litter

c plastic

d streets

3. I bought a of chocolate for dessert.

a bunch

b bar

c piece

d slice

4. Which fruit did you for the picnic?

a pack

b packed

c packing

d packs

5. She has books on her desk.

a any

b some

c an

d a

6. Every weekend Eman a kilo of apples.

a bought

b buys

c buying

d buy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

make - tap - lights - gas - protect

We all need to save Earth's resources like water, electricity and gas. We can use less water by closing the ① and save electricity by turning off ② We should use ③ carefully at home. When we ④ these resources, we keep our planet clean, safe and healthy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

The End-of-Year party took place in the school playground. There were colorful balloons and shiny lights. The students wore special clothes. Some students played games, sang songs and socialized together. The other students took photos to remember the special day. The teachers were happy and celebrated with their students. They all worked hard to make the celebration looked beautiful. It was an unforgettable celebration for everyone.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "took place" means
☐ a happened ☐ b placed ☐ c brought ☐ d wrapped
- The students wore clothes.
☐ a old ☐ b special ☐ c dirty ☐ d small

B. Answer the following questions:

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
- Why did the teachers and the students work hard?
- What were there in the school playground?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- We (**should**) waste gas.
- There (**be**) some dogs under the tree.
- He didn't go outside (**nor**) he was ill.
- What things do we (**used**) every day?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- the sea is calm in Dahab.
- where did the family start their trip.

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

Helping your neighborhood

poor - elderly - work

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 7

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Keeping the planet clean is important.	☐	☐
2. We are responsible to take care of resources.	☐	☐
3. We should turn old things into new ones.	☐	☐
4. Don't waste water or electricity.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- You can't have pizza pasta for lunch.
a or **b** nor **c** but **d** because
- Salma chose a kilo of at the market.
a bread **b** animals **c** water **d** cucumbers .
- Noha blew out candles and made a
a wish **b** sick **c** flag **d** dish
- A:** do you celebrate Labor Day? **B:** It's on May 1st.
a Who **b** When **c** Which **d** What
- My little brother has a toy car.
a small **b** delicious **c** jump **d** far
- There are in Oyoun Mousa.
a books **b** buildings **c** starfish **d** springs

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

kinds – baskets – prepare – perform – joy

Sharing food together helps build teamwork and kindness. When we go outside with our friends, we share all different ❶ of food together. We are happy to ❷ food for picnics. We bring ❸ of fresh food. We have fun and ❹

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

Al Azhar Park is a fantastic place to visit. It's in Cairo. You can go to this park to enjoy the smell of flowers. We like visiting this park to have a picnic. I prepare healthy food with my family. We carry a cooler with ice to put our food because it's hot. In the park we can see birds flying in the sky. There are a lot of trees and palm trees. It's a perfect place for making picnics.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Al Azhar Park is in
 a Giza b Cairo c Alexandria d Port Said
2. We like visiting the park to
 a bring things b study c exercise d have picnics

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do you carry a cooler with ice?
4. What's the main idea of the text?
5. What is Al Azhar Park full of?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Do you have a (bunches) of bananas?
2. We (visit) the library last week.
3. The dog (sit) under the tree every day.
4. The streets were clean (but) everyone used the trash bin.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. we should remember our heroes
2. what was the project about

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

Life in the desert

Life in the desert

wells – tents – camels

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 8

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Samir doesn't like going outside.	☐	☐
2. Samir is strong to climb mountains.	☐	☐
3. Samir takes photos of the mountains' view.	☐	☐
4. Samir learns new things from his trips.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I feel and quiet near the river.
 a noisy b calm c angry d nervous
- A/An is a green place with water in the desert.
 a oasis b environment c town d city
- Where you go last holiday?
 a do b are c did d does
- Why should we electricity?
 a saves b saving c saved d save
- I was very hungry I ate a big meal.
 a so b but c nor d because
- cause air pollution when they release smoke into the sky.
 a Tables b Hospitals c Schools d Factories

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

candles - unforgettable - decorate - buy - blow

My mother's birthday is on 3rd August. It's an ❶ celebration for me. I get up early to ❷ the house with balloons and shiny ribbons. My father buys a big cake. My brother and I ❸ gifts and put ❹ on the top of the cake. We wear party hats and sing for our mom.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة :

Labor Day is a special holiday that celebrates all the workers in our community. It is a day to thank the people who help make our lives better every day. On Labor Day, many people get a day off from work and school. Families may spend time together, go on picnics, or relax at home. It is also a time to remember that every job is important, even if it is big or small. It reminds us to appreciate workers for their efforts.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Labor Day is a time to remember every
 a time b boy c job d picnic
- The text is about a famous
 a celebration b picnic c school d worker

B. Answer the following questions:

- What do many people do on Labor Day?
- What does Labor Day remind us?
- Are all jobs important for our community?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس :

- What did Zeina's mother (made) for the party?
- Should I (took) pictures of the Pyramids?
- Every weekend, I (helps) my mother at home.
- We went to Port Said (nor) saw seagulls flying.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي :

- we had a fun trip
- where is Oyoum Mousa

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) اربع جمل عن :

Preparing for the picnic

pack - biscuits - bread

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 9

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. The trip was very long.	☐	☐
2. The trip that Samy went with his father was amazing.	☐	☐
3. The children were sitting on the Corniche.	☐	☐
4. Samy was angry when the boy threw trash.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The band music on the concert.
 a performed b socialized c placed d clapped
- How did they the canal to Port Fouad?
 a ride b cross c fly d sail
- We should new ideas in our life.
 a applied b applying c apply d applies
- My sister chose a of chocolate for dessert.
 a bunch b bar c carton d bottle
- I don't read a book do I watch TV.
 a but b nor c and d so
- Birds over the sea ten minutes ago.
 a flew b flying c flies d fly

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

showing - bottle - busy - basket - pack

A week ago, I went with my mother to the market. My mother wrote a list of things she wanted and I carried a ① The market was ② and full of lots of people. There were some sellers calling and ③ their fruits and vegetables. I chose a kilo of peaches; they are my favorite fruit. My mother bought a kilo of rice, sugar and a ④ of oil.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

Port Said is a beautiful Egyptian city. It's famous of lovely beaches and fresh air. There are colorful buildings, a busy port and friendly people. Port Said has an important job in the world where ships from many countries **pass through** the Suez Canal, carrying goods from one part of the world to another. Because of this, Port Said is always active and full of life. People enjoy walking along the Corniche, watching the sea, and seeing the ships go by. Port Said is a mix of history, culture and modern life, so it's a wonderful city in Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Port Said is famous for lovely
 a activities b beaches c tents d springs
- The underlined word "**pass through**" means
 a travel across b turn off c run away d climb up

B. Answer the following questions:

- What do people enjoy doing on the Corniche?
- Why is Port Said active and full of life?
- How are the people in Port Said?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- In 2009, I (**have**) a new job in Cairo.
- There (**aren't**) any sugar in my tea.
- I ate three pieces (**in**) cheese.
- What (**is**) in the basket picnic last weekend?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- where does the Nile flow
- we felt proud of our team

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

A day at school

excited - friendly - happy

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 10

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. We had a picnic to the park.	☐	☐
2. The pyramids were built hundreds of years ago.	☐	☐
3. We spent a great time.	☐	☐
4. I took pictures with my brother's camera.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The carried their nets to catch fish
 a guides b nurses c fishermen d doctors
- Did you have food left?
 a some b any c best d a kilo
- Gas is important for cooking and staying
 a cold b angry c warm d tall
- How baskets do you want?
 a much b many c old d tall
- There are four on the counter.
 a juice b cheese c sugar d peaches
- A is a small place with few people and many farms.
 a building b river c port d village

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

polluted - challenges - foods - crowded - buildings

City life is busy and full of activities. The streets are always ① with people and vehicles. There are many tall ② and shops. Living in the city can be noisy and ③ with smoke. There are ④ , but some people love living in the city.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last Saturday, Sara celebrated her tenth birthday. Her friends and cousins came to her house. The living room was decorated with colorful balloons and shiny ribbons. The party started with fun games like hide and seek. Everyone laughed and enjoyed playing together. After the game, Sara's mother brought out a large chocolate cake with ten bright candles on top. Everyone sang "Happy Birthday" while Sara made a wish and blew out the candles. Then, the children ate cake, snacks and juice. At the end of the party, Sara opened her gifts and thanked her friends for coming. It was a wonderful day full of happiness and fun.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Sara made a and blew out candles.
☐ a cake ☐ b wish ☐ c sandwich ☐ d gift
- Sara thanked her friends for
☐ a coming ☐ b helping ☐ c playing ☐ d singing

B. Answer the following questions:

- How old was Sara last Saturday?
- What did Sara's mother bring after the game?
- What was the living room decorated with?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- We should (**being**) kind to animals.
- I didn't (**packed**) any fruits.
- She ate a (**carton**) of cheese.
- There are five (**child**) playing outside.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- who lives near Oyoum Mousa
- people in villages live in small houses

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) أربع جمل عن:

Saving resources at school

turn off - taps - lights

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 11

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Seleem and his family live in a big city.	☐	☐
2. Seleem's mother buys food at the market.	☐	☐
3. Seleem and Mustafa carry the packages with their father.	☐	☐
4. They knock on the doors and share food with families.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Walid presents to give to his friend.
 a blew b wrapped c wore d talked
- Air and water harm animals and plants.
 a pollution b recycling c decoration d celebration
- They food packages to give them to poor people.
 a stayed b visited c carried d raised
- You spend your vacation in a wonderful place.
 a shouldn't b should c doesn't d weren't
- The sky is very bright
 a fun b blue c boring d small
- What game they play last night?
 a does b do c did d were

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

waste - planting - resources - wisely - factories

We all need water, air and sunlight. They are very important ① in our life. We should use them ② We shouldn't ③ water by turning on taps. We shouldn't pollute the air by smoke from ④ When we keep our planet clean, we'll stay healthier.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Recycling means turning old or used materials into new products instead of throwing them away. When we recycle, we help keep our environment clean and reduce the amount of rubbish. We can recycle many things like paper, bottles and cans. Recycling saves energy, protects natural resources and helps reduce pollution. By recycling regularly, everyone can play an important role in protecting our planet and keeping it healthy for future generations.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 a planet b pollution c rubbish d future
- The text is about
 a energy b environment c recycling d celebrations

B. Answer the following questions:

- What does recycling mean?
- Name three items that can be recycled.
- What does recycling help reduce?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- When I was young, I (like) eating dessert.
- He failed the test (or) he was sad.
- How (many) milk do you want?
- Did you go to the park (next) week?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- would you like to visit Oyoun Mousa
- we felt excited at the riverbank

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) اربع جمل عن:

The best decoration competition

classroom - arranged - the winners

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 12

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Mona teaches science at school.
2. The lesson is about healthy food.
3. The students should take care of animals.
4. Plants need water, sunlight and good soil.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Which kind of chocolate did you?
 a get b got c getting d gets
2. What should you when you go hiking?
 a takes b taking c took d take
3. Children had to the stairs to reach to the top floor.
 a climb b pack c deliver d promise
4. Do you want a carton of?
 a rice b bread c milk d cake
5. means to use less and avoid waste.
 a Pollute b Remind c Reuse d Reduce
6. Everyone thanked us and to join next time.
 a promising b promised c promises d promise

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

diving - hiking - activities - comfortable - delicious

I like going to a trip at the mountains. There are many ① to do. I can go ② , but it's important to wear ③ shoes. The view of the mountains is very amazing. I can sit near the mountains and eat ④ food that my mother always pack.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

Last summer, my family and I went on a wonderful trip to Dahab, a beautiful town on the Red Sea in South Sinai. We traveled by car and arrived after a long, but exciting drive through the mountains. When we reached Dahab, the weather was warm and sunny and the sea was bright blue. On our first day, we went to the famous Blue Hole, one of the most popular place for diving in the world. The water there was very clear and we saw colorful fish swimming near the coral reefs. In the evening, we sat by the sea on the soft sand and had a delicious seafood. Our trip to Dahab was unforgettable. I learned the nature can be both beautiful and calming and I hope to visit Dahab again.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The writer sat by the sea on the soft
a chair **b** sand **c** umbrella **d** bag
- The writer and his family drove through the
a rivers **b** mountains **c** forests **d** villages

B. Answer the following questions:

- How did the writer and his family get to Dahab?
- What did the writer see in the clear water?
- Why was the trip unforgettable for the writer?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- (Does) Emad sleep early yesterday?
- She didn't like fish (but) did she cook it.
- How (much) cookies did you eat?
- We need (any) water for our flowers.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- we shouldn t eat canned food.
- the blue balloon floated in the sky

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) اربع جمل عن:

Your summer vacation

Alexandria - swimming - memorable

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 13

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Sharing helps spend happy moments.	☐	☐
2. We can share toys with our brothers or sisters.	☐	☐
3. Sharing a smile or a kind word can't make a difference.	☐	☐
4. Helping our parents and at home is sharing.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We with our friends at the party.
 a socialize b throw c wrap d reduce
- You shouldn't scary animals.
 a touched b touch c touching d touches
- Why did the kite fly the river?
 a across b under c during d for
- weekend, we give food to people in need.
 a Last b Every c Next d Once
- There is a strong carrying a heavy bag.
 a volunteer b children c men d visitors
- Visitors can drink water from in Oyoun Mousa.
 a lakes b springs c ponds d canals

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

harming - factories - better - things - lights

The environment is everything around us, like the air we breathe, the water we drink, the land we walk on, and all the plants and animals that live on Earth. A clean and healthy environment helps people live ① and protect all living ② Pollution is ③ our environment. Smoke from cars and ④ cause the air dirty. Throwing plastic in the rivers harms animals and makes water unsafe to drink.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Life in the desert is very different from life in other places. The desert is a hot, dry area where there's a little rain. During the day, the sun is very strong and at night, it becomes much cold. People, plants and animals that live in the desert can adapt to the life there. The people who live there are called Bedouins. They live in tents. Animals like foxes, snakes, lizards and insects can hide during the day and come out at night to stay cool. The camel is the most famous animal in the desert and it can walk long distances under the hot sun. The desert is a difficult place, but it has advantages, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The is the most famous animal in the desert.
 a lion b camel c giraffe d horse
- The underlined word "They" refers to
 a distances b bedouins c places d animals

B. Answer the following questions:

- What's the text about?
- What's the weather in the desert at night?
- Mention the animals that live in the desert.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- What (is) Recycle mean?
- Samy smiled when he (finds) a coin.
- No, we (should) forget our books.
- Our neighbor (told) us stories every morning.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- what did omar write about
- i learnt how to fly a kite

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) أربع جمل عن:

Saving water

turn off - the taps - brushing

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 14

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. The Red Sea is famous for clear water.	☐	☐
2. You can't relax on the sand.	☐	☐
3. There are fun activities to do there.	☐	☐
4. You can see beautiful dolphins and crabs.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Should you at home when you are sick?
a stay **b** staying **c** stayed **d** stays
- Yasser a new job in 2008.
a received **b** receive **c** receiving **d** receives
- She bought two of bread for breakfast.
a bars **b** slices **c** packs **d** cartons
- The kind lady needs help with her bag.
a crowded **b** long **c** delicious **d** elderly
- The truck is clean water to the people in the village.
a turning **b** delivering **c** walking **d** raising
- A/An is a long line of water that moves to the sea.
a desert **b** village **c** oasis **d** river

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

won - clapped - adapted - sat - performed

Our school held a concert yesterday. We ① together in the playground. We listened to songs and everyone was happy. Then, my friend Hisham ② music on his guitar. He's very good and ③ a prize. All the students ④ and cheered. Our teachers thanked us for sharing food together.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last Friday, our class went on a picnic to the park. The weather was warm and sunny, and everyone was excited. We sat under the big trees and opened our lunch boxes. Some students brought sandwiches while others had fruit, vegetables and juice. After eating, we played games like football and hide-and-seek. We also walked around the lake and watched the ducks swimming. The teachers took pictures of us while we were having fun. At the end of the day, we cleaned up the area and the park was tidy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- At the end of the day, the park was
 a crowded b messy c dirty d tidy
- The took pictures of us while we were having fun.
 a guides b teachers c students d parents

B. Answer the following questions:

- What did the children do after eating lunch?
- Which animals did the students see in the lake?
- Where did the students sit at the park?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- You should (**climbing**) the stairs, the building is high.
- We (**go**) horseback riding last vacation.
- There are twenty (**desk**) in my classroom.
- I brought a bottle (**in**) water for a trip.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- the Nile is full of tall grass
- what shouldn't you do at home

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) اربع جمل عن:

A special day at home

helped – mother – washed

.....

.....

.....

.....

AL - Azhar General Tests

AL- Azhar

Test 15

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Zein celebrated his birthday at
☐ a park ☐ home ☐ a restaurant
- Zein blew out
☐ gifts ☐ games ☐ candles
- Zein decorated with his
☐ friends ☐ family ☐ neighbors

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

nice - family - write - did

Ali : Hi, Sara, did you finish your homework?

Sara: Yes, I ① It was easy.

Ali : What did you ② about?

Sara: I wrote about my ③

Ali : That's ④ ! I wrote about my school.

Sara: Great !

C- Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- You touch the starfish.
☐ shouldn't ☐ should ☐ doesn't
- Many tourists like to go in the sea.
☐ riding ☐ snorkeling ☐ sleeping
- We bought fresh from the market to cook for lunch.
☐ books ☐ pens ☐ vegetables
- He ate piece of cheese for breakfast.
☐ some ☐ an ☐ a

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصح الكلمة التي تحتها خط:

1. Did you goes to the park last week?
2. She bought a orange from the market.
3. You shouldn't plays in the street.
4. We walk to the park yesterday.

D- Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last month, Laila and her brother Samy went to a small park near their house. The weather was cool and nice. They played on the swings and ran on the grass. Samy watched the birds in the trees. Laila bought some juice from a small shop. The seller was kind. They sat on a bench and ate sandwiches. Laila and Samy enjoyed their time in the park.

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

	T	F
1. Laila and Samy went to the park last month.	☐	☐
2. The weather was hot.	☐	☐

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. The seller was
 a short b lazy c kind
4. Samy watched
 a toys b boats c birds
5. The opposite of the word "cool" is
 a clean b tall c hot

E- Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) اربع جمل عن:

A day in Dahab

holiday - diving - corals - snorkeling

.....

.....

.....

.....

AL- Azhar

Test 16

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Ahmed and Sara prepared food packages to families.

☐ a rich☐ b poor☐ c big

2. They bought fruits, vegetables, and

☐ a clothes☐ b bread☐ c toys

3. They felt after delivering the food

☐ a tired☐ b happy☐ c bored

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

Did - bring - picnic - juice

Sara: Where did you go last weekend?

Ali : I went on a ①

Sara: That's nice! What did you ②?

Ali : I brought bread, cheese, and ③

Sara: Yummy! ④ you bring fruit?

Ali : Yes, I brought apples.

C- Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I would like cheese on my sandwich.

☐ a a piece of☐ b a☐ c any

2. We took the across the canal to Port Fouad.

☐ a car☐ b ferry☐ c train

3. My sister a gift to her friend yesterday.

☐ a bought☐ b buy☐ c buys

4. The Nile flows through Egypt.

☐ a Sea☐ b Ocean☐ c River

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصح الكلمة التي تحتها خط:

1. I didn't watched TV yesterday.
2. We don't have an slice of bread left for breakfast.
3. The unkind teacher helped all the students with their work.
4. A: Should I take pictures of the corals? B: No, you should.

D- Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

On Thursday, our class visited the city library. The librarian showed us many books about animals and science. My friends and I chose some stories to read together. We sat on the soft chairs and read quietly. After reading, we drew pictures of our favorite characters. Before leaving, we thanked the librarian for her help. Everyone enjoyed the trip and wanted to come again!

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

	T	F
1. The class visited the library on Thursday.	☐	☐
2. The students were noisy inside the library.	☐	☐

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. We visited the
 a park b library c museum
4. We drew pictures of our favorite
 a places b characters c foods
5. Before leaving, we thanked the
 a teacher b driver c librarian

E- Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

A day in the village

Last weekend – near – fresh – air

.....

.....

.....

.....

AL- Azhar

Test 17

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. We watched the near the Corniche.

a ships

b birds

c cars

2. We took the to Port Fouad.

a ferry

b taxi

c bus

3. We ate seafood before going home.

a tasty

b cold

c hot

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

ice cream - football - fine - park

Ali : Hi, Mona! How are you?

Mona: I'm 1! How about you?

Ali : I'm happy. I went to the 2

Mona: That's nice! What did you do there?

Ali : I played 3with my friends.

Mona: That sounds fun!

Ali : Yes, it was. We also had 4

C- Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. She ate a piece of for dinner.

a water

b cheese

c milk

2. He eat meat yesterday.

a can't

b doesn't

c didn't

3. How many are in your bag?

a rice

b books

c juice

4. He didn't study, he failed the test.

a so

b or

c nor

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصح الكلمة التي تحتها خط:

1. She likes apples but she likes bananas.
2. Sarah eats an apple after lunch yesterday.
3. You should play in the rain.
4. We played football next week.

D- Reading Comprehension

5 Read and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Every Saturday, my family goes to the beach. We take our umbrellas, sandwiches and snacks. My sister and I like building sandcastles. My dad swims in the sea, and my mom reads her favorite book. We all eat sandwiches together at lunchtime. We always enjoy our day at the beach.

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

1. My family goes to the beach every Saturday.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐

2. My dad likes reading his favorite book.

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. My sister and I like building

- a** houses **b** sandcastles **c** boats

4. We eat together at lunchtime.

- a** sandwiches **b** pizza **c** rice

5. My dad swims in the

- a** pool **b** river **c** sea

E- Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

My birthday party

hang shiny ribbons - candles - decorate - guests

.....

.....

.....

.....

AL- Azhar

Test 18

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Youssef helped his grandfather the boat.
☐ a clean ☐ b sail ☐ c paint
2. The water in the Nile River was
☐ a rough ☐ b dirty ☐ c calm
3. The farms near the river were
☐ a grey ☐ b green ☐ c dry

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

Tanta - football - old - live

Ali : Hi, Tamer! How old are you?

Tamer: I'm ten years 1

Ali : Where do you 2

Tamer: I live in 3

Ali : What's your favorite sport?

Tamer: I like 4

C- Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My friend me a gift yesterday.
☐ a ate ☐ b gave ☐ c thanked
2. He wear sunglasses. It's sunny today.
☐ a are ☐ b don't ☐ c should
3. How many are in your pencil case?
☐ a pens ☐ b water ☐ c juice
4. She didn't study did she pass the test.
☐ a so ☐ b or ☐ c nor

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصح الكلمة التي تحتها خط:

1. I ate an piece of cheese.-----
2. Sarah plays video games yesterday.-----
3. You shouldn't come to school on time.-----
4. He likes apples but she buys a lot of them.-----

D- Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Every Sunday, my family visits the park. We take a picnic bag, juice, and fruit. My brother and I like riding our bikes on the small paths. My dad plays football with us, and my mom takes photos of the trees and flowers. At noon, we all sit together and enjoy our picnic. We always have a wonderful time at the park.

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

	T	F
1. My family visits the park every Sunday.	☐	☐
2. My mom plays football with us.	☐	☐

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. My brother and I like riding our -----
a bikes
b horses
c buses
4. We take a picnic bag, juice, and -----
a meat
b fruit
c toys
5. My dad plays ----- with us.
a tennis
b football
c basketball

E- Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (4) اربع جمل عن:

Helping your community

plant trees - plastic - rubbish - reduce

AL- Azhar

Test 19

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- The playground looked during the celebration.
☐ a ugly ☐ b beautiful ☐ c boring
- Colorful balloons were hanging from the
☐ a trees ☐ b fences ☐ c windows
- The students wore their special clothes and happily.
☐ a cried ☐ b shouted ☐ c smiled

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue::

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

sounds - did - wonderful - scuba diving

Karima: Hi Salma! How was your mid-year vacation?**Salma:** It was ①! I spent my holiday in Dahab with my family.**Karima:** Wow! What ② you do there?**Salma:** We went ③ and saw many starfish.

You should really try it one day!

Karima: That ④ fun!

C- Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We went in the sea and saw many colorful fish.
☐ a flying ☐ b scuba diving ☐ c horseback riding
- You eat too many sweets.
☐ are ☐ d don't ☐ e shouldn't
- Water, air, and sunlight are important we all need.
☐ a pens ☐ b resources ☐ c boys
- He played football watched TV.
☐ a so ☐ b and ☐ c nor

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصح الكلمة التي تحتها خط:

1. I didn't watched TV yesterday.-----
2. She has a orange fruit in her bag.-----
3. Last Friday, we go to the park early in the morning.-----
4. We were tired, because we went to sleep early.-----

D- Reading Comprehension

5 Read and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Nabil and Gamal are good students. They keep their community clean. They don't throw trash in streets. They turn off the taps and save electricity by switching off the lights when they leave their room. Their parents feel proud of them.

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

1. Nabil and Gamal throw trash in the streets.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐

2. Their friends feel proud of them.

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. Nabil and Gamal are -----.

- a** teachers **b** students **c** cousins

4. Nabil and Gamal keep their ----- clean.

- a** village **b** school **c** community

5. They save electricity by ----- off lights.

- a** switching **b** wasting **c** recycling

E- Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) اربع جمل عن:

A trip to the mountain

cold - rocks - peaceful - delicious

1 Read and complete the text:

اقرأ واكمل النص:

river – nice – market – flowers

Last week, Lina and Sara visited a quiet village. The weather was
 1 They walked by the 2, took photos, and smelled
 3 They talked to a farmer, bought fruit from the 4, and
 learned about village life.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- We bought a carton of for tea.
 a milk b meat c fish d cake
- A was catching fish with his net.
 a doctor b farmer c teacher d fisherman
- The teacher us homework a few days ago.
 a give b gives c giving d gave
- We took a across the canal to visit the other side.
 a bicycle b ferry c kite d bike

3 Read and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I spent a nice time in Dahab. The sea was very clear and great for swimming. I saw many colorful fish and pretty corals. The beach was clean, and the sand was soft. I even found a big seashell on the beach. This place is calm, fun, and full of simple adventures. I really enjoyed being here!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Dahab was a place.
 a noisy b dirty c calm d boring
- The sea in Dahab was.....
 a cloudy b very clear c black d dry

Tests

3. The writer saw in the water.

☐ a birds

☐ b fish

☐ c paper

☐ d nets

4. The writer found a big on the beach.

☐ a book

☐ b seashell

☐ c phone

☐ d ball

E- Writing

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. the - Your - brother - in - runs - classroom.

☐ a Your brother in runs the classroom.

☐ b Your brother runs in the classroom.

☐ c Your brother in the runs classroom.

2. didn't - breakfast - Sara - eat.

☐ a Sara didn't eat breakfast.

☐ b Sara didn't breakfast eat.

☐ c Sara eat breakfast didn't.

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

اختر الترتيب الصحيح للجمل لتكون فقرة إنشائية:

a- I bought fruit and vegetables.	1- ()
b- Yesterday, I went to the market.	2- ()
c- Then, I went to bed.	3- ()
d- After the market ,I went back home.	4- ()

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في كراسة التدريبات



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع
الواردة في كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات
الخاصة بكتاب **Bit by Bit**

Test on Unit 1

We spent a good day on my uncle's farm in Al Fayoum. We traveled by train. The farm is near the River Nile. We walked along the Nile and enjoyed the fresh air. We took photos of the view. Then, my uncle brought fresh fruit and vegetables and told us a story about the Nile.

Test on Unit 2

We need to take care of animals and plants. Animals need food, water and a safe place. We never hurt or scare animals. Plants need sunlight, water and soil. When we care for them, our planet stays clean and healthy.

Test on Unit 3

Last week, Kamal and Tarek helped clean the park in their neighborhood. They picked up trash in the bin, watered the plants, and grew new flowers. The park looked much better after hard work, and promised to clean it again next week.

Test on Unit 4

Nabil had a birthday party with his family and friends last month. They played games and listened to music. Nabil clapped and laughed with his friends. It was a fun day with laughter and joy. They enjoyed a nice meal and ate cakes.

Test on Unit 5

South Sinai is a beautiful place for adventure. We can do many activities and enjoy our vacation. We can hike in the mountains, dive in the Red Sea and explore deserts. We can visit many places there. It's a great place full of nature and history.

General Tests

Test 1

Nabil lives in a small neighborhood. It's quiet and the people are friendly. There are a lot of gardens and Nabil can enjoy the fresh air. Nabil is a kind boy. He helps the elderly people in his neighborhood.

Test 2

We should reduce pollution in our country. We can walk, cycle and share

Listening

rides with others instead of using many cars. We should plant more trees and plants. We must throw litter in the bin to keep the streets clean.

Test 3

We had a fun day in Dahab. I spent my holiday in Dahab with my family. We went scuba diving and saw many starfish. Then, my father went snorkeling and saw many sharp corals, so he couldn't touch them. We had a fun time there.

Test 4

Oyoun Mousa is a natural wonder and historical site for everyone. Long ago, Moses and the people drank water from these springs during their journey through the desert. Today many visitors come to enjoy the clean water and the quiet desert.

Test 5

Recycling is important in our life. This helps us protect our planet. We can reuse plastic bottles instead of throwing them. We must take care of nature and animals. We can turn old materials into new things. We should apply new ideas together.

Test 6

My friend Omar does a project at school. It is about comparing life in the city and

the village. Omar writes about the city. He doesn't like the city because it's noisy and people live in tall buildings. Then, he likes the village. People live simply. They farm, raise animals. He thinks it's better than the village.

Test 7

Our world is our responsibility. We must keep the planet clean and safe. Our role is taking care of the resources around us. We should recycle old things into new ones. We don't waste water or electricity.

Test 8

Samir likes adventure. He always goes outside to go hiking in the mountains. He's strong to climb up mountains. On weekends, he gets up early and packs his bag. He takes his camera to take photos of the amazing view. He learns new things from each trip.

Test 9

Samy went to the Nile River with his grandfather. They rode a small boat. The trip was short but amazing. The weather was sunny and the water was calm. Samy saw some children playing along the Corniche. Suddenly, one boy threw trash in the river. Samy was angry and advised the boy not to do that again.

Test 10

We had a picnic to the pyramids. The pyramids are amazing. They were built thousands of years ago. We spent a great time and took a lot of pictures with my father's camera.

Test 11

Seleem and his family live in a small neighborhood. Every Friday, they prepare food packages for the poor people. Seleem's mother cooks delicious food. His father goes to the market to buy fruits and vegetables. Seleem and his brother Mustafa were excited to pack the food carefully. They carry the food packages with their father. They knock on the doors and give families food.

Test 12

My friend Mona is a science teacher. She had a lesson about caring for animals and plants. She teaches her students to be kind to animals and give them food. Sunlight, water and good soil are important for plants.

Test 13

Sharing with our family helps us spend happy moments. When we share our toys, time and both feelings with the people we love it, it shows kindness and

care. At home, we can share in many ways. We can share our toys with our brothers and sisters, help our parents at home. Even sharing a smile or a kind word can make our day better.

Test 14

There are famous cities located on the Red Sea. For example Hurghada, Sharm El-Sheikh, Dahab and Marsa Alam. They are perfect places to do many activities. You can go snorkeling and see beautiful fish, sea turtles and amazing corals. You can relax on golden sands and enjoy the warm weather and beautiful blue water.

Test 15

Zein celebrated his birthday at home, decorating with his family, playing games with friends, eating cake, and blowing out candles.

Test 16

Two weeks ago, Ahmed and Sara prepared food packages for poor families. They bought fruits, vegetables, and bread, then delivered them with big smiles and happiness.

Test 17

Last weekend, my family and I visited Port Said. We walked along the Corniche and watched the ships. Then, we took the ferry to Port Fouad and enjoyed the fresh air and tasty seafood.

18

Last Friday, Youssef went on a trip with his grandfather to the Nile River. They woke up early and took a small boat. He helped his grandfather sail. The water in the river was calm. Youssef saw fishermen catching fish. His grandfather showed him the green farms near the river where farmers plant crops, vegetables, and fruits.

19

The school playground looked beautiful during the celebration. There were colorful balloons hanging from the fences and shiny lights all around the place. A loud song was played while the students wore their special clothes and smiled happily.

Notes